

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations
and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representation of
The original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,
please do not report the images to the
Image Problem Mailbox.**

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 5 : C07H 17/02, C07D 235/04 A61K 31/07, 31/395	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 92/07867 (43) International Publication Date: 14 May 1992 (14.05.92)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US91/08124 (22) International Filing Date: 31 October 1991 (31.10.91) (30) Priority data: 607,899 US 1 November 1990 (01.11.90) US (60) Parent Application or Grant (63) Related by Continuation US 607,899 (CIP) Filed on 1 November 1990 (01.11.90) (71) Applicant (<i>for all designated States except US</i>): THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN [US/US]; 475 East Jefferson, Room 2354, Ann Arbor, MI 48109-1248 (US).		(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (<i>for US only</i>) : TOWNSEND, Leroy, B. [US/US]; 3317 E. Dobson Pl., Ann Arbor, MI 48105 (US). DRACH, John, C. [US/US]; 1372 Barrister Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105 (US). (74) Agents: LEWAK, Anna, M. et al.; Harness, Dickey & Pierce, P.O. Box 828, Bloomfield Hills, MI 48303 (US). (81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BB, BE (European patent), BF (OAPI patent), BG, BJ (OAPI patent), BR, CA, CF (OAPI patent), CG (OAPI patent), CH (European patent), CI (OAPI patent), CM (OAPI patent), CS, DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FI, FR (European patent), GA (OAPI patent), GB (European patent), GN (OAPI patent), GR (European patent), HU, IT (European patent), JP, KP, KR, LK, LU (European patent), MC, MG, ML (OAPI patent), MN, MR (OAPI patent), MW, NL (European patent), NO, PL, RO, SD, SE (European patent), SN (OAPI patent), SU⁺, TD (OAPI patent), TG (OAPI patent), US. Published <i>With international search report.</i>

(54) Title: POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZIMIDAZOLES AS ANTIVIRAL AGENTS

(57) Abstract

This invention relates to novel polysubstituted benzimidazoles and compositions and their use in the treatment of viral infections. The polysubstituted benzimidazoles and compositions of the present invention exhibit antiviral properties against viruses of the herpes family, particularly human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) and herpes simplex viruses (HSV).

* See back of page

Ref. #30
2805/5 (PHA 4166.5)
Moorman et al.
Express Mail
EL801508119US

No. :

+ DESIGNATIONS OF "SU"

Any designation of "SU" has effect in the Russian Federation. It is not yet known whether any such designation has effect in other States of the former Soviet Union.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar
AU	Australia	FI	Finland	ML	Mali
BB	Barbados	FR	France	MN	Mongolia
BE	Belgium	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BF	Burkina Faso	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BG	Bulgaria	GN	Guinea	NL	Netherlands
BJ	Benin	GR	Greece	NO	Norway
BR	Brazil	HU	Hungary	PL	Poland
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	RO	Romania
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	SD	Sudan
CC	Congo	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KR	Republic of Korea	SN	Senegal
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LJ	Liechtenstein	SU+	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TC	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	US	United States of America

- 1 -

POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZIMIDAZOLES AS ANTIVIRAL AGENTS**SPONSORSHIP**

This invention was made with government support under Contract N . NO1 AI 42554 and NO1 AI 72641 awarded by the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases of the National Institutes of Health. The government has certain rights in this invention.

RELATED APPLICATIONS

This is a continuation-in-part application of United States Patent Application Serial No. 607,899 entitled "Polysubstituted Benzimidazole Nucleosides as Antiviral Agents" filed 10 November 1, 1990, by Townsend et al.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates generally to polysubstituted benzimidazoles and, more particularly, to novel polysubstituted benzimidazoles and compositions, their preparation and their use as antiviral agents, particularly against human cytomegalovirus and herpes simplex virus.

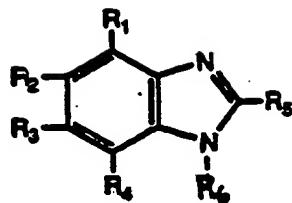
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Antiviral activity of polysubstituted benzimidazoles such as 5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl) benzimidazole (DRB) and some closely related derivatives has been previously described. Their activity against specific viruses, such as RNA rhinovirus and 20 DNA herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2, has also been reported.

Benzimidazole nucleosides are particularly attractive as potential antiviral agents because of their stability toward some major pathways of bioactive purine (bicyclic) nucleoside inactivation, e.g., deamination by adenosine deaminase and glycosidic bond cleavage by purine nucleoside phosphorylases. Benzimidazole nucleosides such as DRB 25 have, however, demonstrated only marginal levels of activity or generally unacceptable levels of cytotoxicity, or both, thereby greatly diminishing their usefulness in the treatment of viral infections. It would thus be desirable to provide polysubstituted benzimidazoles and compositions thereof having good antiviral properties, preferably with a low degree of cytotoxicity.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to novel antiviral compositions comprising a polysubstituted benzimidazole and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and methods of treatment therewith, wherein the polysubstituted benzimidazole is selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following formula and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and formulations thereof:



wherein

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);

5 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

10 R_1 is H, R_2 is NO_2 , R_3 is NO_2 , R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

15 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is H, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);

20 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is I and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);

25 R_1 is Br, R_2 is Br, R_3 is H, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

30 R_1 is H, R_2 is Br, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);

35 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

40 R_1 is H, R_2 is I, R_3 is I, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

45 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

50 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

55 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

60 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is F, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

- 3 -

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

25 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

10 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is OCH₃ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

and operative combinations thereof.

As used herein, by "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" is meant any composition, solvent, dispersion medium, coating, delivery vehicle or the like, which can be employed 30 to administer the compounds and compositions of the present invention without undue adverse physiological effects. By "operative combination" is meant any chemically compatible combination of the compounds which does not eliminate the antiviral activity of the composition.

The present invention also relates to a method of antiviral treatment generally 35 comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of

- 5 -

a polysubstituted benzimidazole selected from the above-described group. By "therapeutically effective amount" is meant an amount generally effective to achieve the desired antiviral effect.

The present invention further relates to the use of a polysubstituted benzimidazole
5 selected from the above-described group in the manufacturing of medicaments for antiviral
use. The present invention also relates to compositions comprising a polysubstituted
benzimidazole selected from the above-described group in combination with other antiviral
agents outside the group.

The present invention further relates to the novel polysubstituted benzimidazoles
10 used in the compositions and treatments of the present invention and methods of their
making. Novel benzimidazoles include compounds 52, 61, 83a, 85, 95, 99, 107, 111, 112,
7, 12c, 13, 19, 26, 32, 41, 41c, 57, 65, 65a, 67, 81b, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 103, 113, 134, 182,
42a, 52b, 42, 52a, 81, 155, 156, 166, 166a, 167.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

15 Figures 1 and 2 are synthesis schemes and tables of polysubstituted
benzimidazoles in accordance with the principles of the present invention.

Figure 3 is a table of antiviral activity and cytotoxicity of polysubstituted
benzimidazoles in accordance with the principles of the present invention.

20 Figure 4 is a table of the effects of a polysubstituted benzimidazole nucleoside on
the replication of selected herpes viruses in accordance with the principles of the present
invention.

Figure 5 is a dose response curve comparing the activity against human
cytomegalovirus of two polysubstituted benzimidazole nucleosides to the known drug
ganciclovir in accordance with the principles of the present invention.

25 Figure 6 is a graph illustrating the low degree of cytotoxicity (cell growth inhibition)
of a polysubstituted benzimidazole nucleoside in accordance with the principles of the
present invention.

Figure 7 is a graph illustrating the reversibility of the cytotoxic effects produced by
a very high level of a polysubstituted benzimidazole nucleoside in accordance with the
30 principles of the present invention.

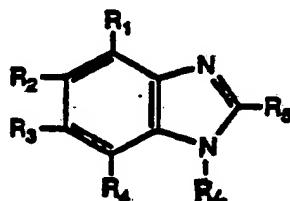
Figure 8 is a graph illustrating the cytotoxic effects of DRB on cell growth and its
irreversibility.

Figure 9 is a table of antiviral activity and cytotoxicity of polysubstituted
benzimidazoles in accordance with the principles of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

A. Chemical Structure of Polysubstituted Benzimidazoles of the Invention

Novel antiviral compositions of the present invention comprise a polysubstituted benzimidazole and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, wherein the polysubstituted benzimidazole is selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following formula and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and formulations thereof:



wherein

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

- 8 -

R_1 is H, R_2 is Br, R_3 is H, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is H, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

5 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R_1 is Br, R_2 is Br, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

10 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxymethyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

15 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxymethyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

20 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is OCH₃ and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

25 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

30 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

and operative combinations thereof.

Thus compounds in the practice of the compositions and methods of the present
35 invention include:

- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);
- 5,6-dichloro-2-bromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);
- 5 2-chloro-5,6-dinitro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);
- 6 2,4,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);
- 10 5,6-dichloro-2-iodo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = I; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);
- 10 2-chloro-4,5-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₃, R₄ = H; R₁, R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);
- 15 5-bromo-2,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂ = Br; R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);
- 15 6-bromo-2,5-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = Br; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);
- 15 2-chloro-5,6-diiodo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = I; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);
- 15 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = I; R₅, R₆ = Cl (denoted compound 111 in the text);
- 20 5,6-dichloro-2-bromo-1-(2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);
- 20 2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br (denoted compound 7 in the text);
- 25 2,5(6)-dichloro-6(5)-fluorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = F (denoted compound 12c in the text);
- 25 2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole where R₄, R₆ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 13 in the text);
- 25 2-chloro-5-nitrobenzimidazole where R₁, R₃, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 19 in the text);
- 30 2-chloro-5(6)-iodo-6(5)-nitrobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂ = I; R₃ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 26 in the text);
- 30 2,4,6-trichlorobenzimidazole where R₂, R₄, R₆ = H; R₁, R₃, R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 32 in the text);

- 2-chloro-5,6-dii dobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂, R₃ = I, R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 41 in the text);
- 2,4(7)-dichloro-6(5)-triflu romethylbenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂, R₃ = I; R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 41c in the text);
- 5 2-amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);
- 2-benzylthio-5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = SCH₂ C₆H₅; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);
- 10 2-chloro-5,6-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = F; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);
- 15 2,5-dichloro-6-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,5) and 2,6-dichloro-5-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,6) where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = F; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);
- 2,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₄ = H; R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);
- 14 4,6-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = CF₃; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);
- 20 2,4-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = CF₃; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);
- 5-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₃, R₄ = H; R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);
- 25 6-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₄ = H; R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl, R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);
- 1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole where R₄ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);
- 28 2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-4,5,6-tribromobenzimidazole where R₄ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);
- 30 2-amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2-deoxy- β -D-erythro-pentafuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);
- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-arabinofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

- 2,4,5,6,7-pentachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);
- 2-amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);
- 2,4,5,6,7-pentachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);
- 2-methoxy-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = OCH₃; R₆ = 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);
- 2-amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);
- 2-amino-1-benzyl-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);
- 1-(5-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 5-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);
- 1-(5-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = 5-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);
- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);
- 2-bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);
- and operative combinations thereof.
- Preferred compounds in the practice of the compositions and methods of the present invention include:
- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);
- 5,6-dichloro-2-bromo-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5,6-dinitro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

- 2,4,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);
- 5,6-dichloro-2-iodo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = I; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);
- 5 2-chloro-4,5-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₃, R₄ = H; R₁, R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);
- 5-bromo-2,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂ = Br; R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);
- 6-bromo-2,5-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₅ = 10 Cl; R₃ = Br; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5,6-diido-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = I; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);
- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);
- 15 5,6-dichloro-2-bromo-1-(2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);
- 2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br (denoted compound 7 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5-nitrobenzimidazole where R₁, R₃, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl 20 (denoted compound 19 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5(6)-iodo-6(5)-nitrobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄, R₆ = H; R₂ = I; R₃ = NO₂; R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 26 in the text);
- 2,4,6-trichlorobenzimidazole where R₂, R₄, R₆ = H; R₁, R₃, R₅ = Cl (denoted compound 32 in the text);
- 25 2-benzylthio-5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = SCH₂ C₆ H₅; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);
- 2-chloro-5,6-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);
- 30 2-chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = F; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);
- 2,5-dichloro-6-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,5) and 2,6-dichloro-5-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,6) where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = F; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);
- 2,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₄ = H; R₃, R₅ = Cl; 35 R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

- 13 -

- 4,6-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = CF₃; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);
- 2,4-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = CF₃; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);
- 5 5-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₃, R₄ = H; R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);
- 6-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₄ = H; R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);
- 10 1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole where R₄ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);
- 2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-4,5,6-tribromobenzimidazole where R₄ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);
- 15 2-amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2-deoxy- β -D-erythro-pentafuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);
- 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-arabinofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);
- 2,4,5,6,7-pentachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);
- 20 2-amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);
- 2-methoxy-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = OCH₃; R₆ = 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);
- 25 2-amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);
- 2-amino-1-benzyl-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ =
- 30 NH₂; R₆ = benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);
- 1-(5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);
- 35 1-(5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

2,5,6-trichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

5 2-bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

and operative combinations thereof.

More preferred compounds in the practice of the compositions and methods of the present invention include:

10 2,5,6-trichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);

5,6-dichloro-2-bromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = Br; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

2-chloro-4,5-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₃, R₄ = H; R₁, R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

2,5,6-trichloro-1-(2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

2-benzylthio-5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = SCH₂C₆H₅; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

20 2-chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = F; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

2,5-dichloro-6-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,5) and 2,6-dichloro-5-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (2,6) where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = F; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

25 2,4-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole where R₂, R₄ = H; R₁, R₅ = Cl; R₃ = CF₃; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

5-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₃, R₄ = H; R₂ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

6-bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₄ = H; R₃ = Br; R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole where R₄ = H; R₁, R₂, R₃, R₅ = Cl; R₆ = β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

2-amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole where R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound

35 156 in the text);

2-amino-1-benzyl-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole where R₁, R₄ = H; R₂, R₃ = Cl; R₅ = NH₂; R₆ = benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);
and perative combinations thereof.

The present invention also comprises novel polysubstituted benzimidazoles, and,
5 as later described, their synthesis and use in medicaments and methods of treatment.
Novel polysubstituted benzimidazoles of the present invention include compounds 52, 61,
83a, 85, 95, 99, 107, 111, 112, 7, 12c, 13, 19, 26, 32, 41, 41c, 57, 65, 65a, 67, 81b, 81c,
87, 90, 92, 103, 113, 134, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a, 81, 155, 156, 166, 166a, 167 of the
above-described group. The structures of compounds 81, 155, 156, 166, 166a, and 167
10 were depicted in Abstracts submitted to the April 1990 meeting of the American Chemical
Society in Boston, Massachusetts. The structures of compounds 45, 44 and 54 were also
previously proposed in Townsend et al., *Chem. Reviews* 70:389 (1970) and Smith et al.,
Cancer Treat. Rep. 60:1567-1584 (1976), but without a description of synthesis and without
recognition of any antiviral activity or therapeutic value as antiviral agents. Preferred novel
15 compounds of the present invention include compounds 52, 85, 111, 65, 65a, 81c, 87, 90,
92 and 182.

B. Pharmaceutical Compositions and Administration

The polysubstituted benzimidazoles used in the practice of the present invention
all exhibit antiviral activity, many with acceptable cytotoxicity. It will be appreciated that
20 compounds of the present invention which exhibit relatively high antiviral activity versus
cytotoxicity, i.e. good selectivity, are preferred. It will also be appreciated that antiviral
treatment in accordance with the present invention encompasses the treatment of viral
infections, as well as prophylactic treatment which may be desired in certain situations,
e.g. in immuno-compromised patients, such as bone marrow transplant patients.

25 The polysubstituted benzimidazoles of the invention have been demonstrated as
particularly effective against viruses of the herpes family. They are thus useful in treatment
against human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) and herpes simplex viruses types 1 and 2. Other
viruses contemplated to be treated within the scope of the present invention include, but
are not limited to: varicella-zoster virus (varicella; zoster, chickenpox; shingles); Epstein-
30 Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis; glandular fever; and Burkitt's lymphoma); HHV6;
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis viruses.

35 The compounds and compositions of the present invention can be used in the
manufacture of medicaments and in antiviral treatment of humans and other animals by
administration in accordance with conventional procedures, such as an active ingredient
in pharmaceutical compositions. The compounds of the invention can be provided as

pharmaceutically acceptable formulations and/or "prodrugs," including but not limited to esters, especially carboxylic acid esters (preferably C₁ to C₂₀), such as 5'- acetyl and 2',3',5'-triacetyl prodrugs (e.g. compounds 42a, 52b, 42 and 52a) and pharmaceutical salts such as thiolate, citrate and acetate salts.

- 5 The pharmaceutical compositions can be administered topically, orally, or parentally and may take the form of tablets, lozenges, granules, capsules, pills, ampoules or suppositories. They may also take the form of ointments, gels, pastes, creams, sprays, lotions, suspensions, solutions and emulsions of the active ingredient in aqueous or nonaqueous diluents, syrups, granulates or powders. In addition to a compound of the
10 present invention, the pharmaceutical compositions can also contain other pharmaceutically active compounds or a plurality of compounds of the invention.

More particularly, a compound of the formula of the present invention also referred to herein as the active ingredient, may be administered for therapy by any suitable route including oral, rectal, nasal, topical (including transdermal, buccal and sublingual), vaginal, 15 parental (including subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous and intradermal) and pulmonary. It will also be appreciated that the preferred route will vary with the condition and age of the recipient and the nature of the infection.

- In general, a suitable dose for each of the above-named viral infections, e.g., CMV, EBV, and HHV6 infections, is in the range of about 0.1 to about 250 mg per kilogram body
20 weight of the recipient per day, preferably in the range of about 1 to about 100 mg per kilogram body weight per day and most preferably in the range of about 5 to about 20 mg per kilogram body weight per day. Unless otherwise indicated, all weights of active ingredient are calculated as the parent compound of the formula of the present invention for salts or esters thereof, the weights would be increased proportionately. The desired
25 dose is preferably presented as two, three, four, five, six or more sub-doses administered at appropriate intervals throughout the day. These sub-doses may be administered in unit dosage forms, for example, containing about 10 to about 1000 mg, preferably about 20 to about 500 mg, and most preferably about 100 to about 400 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form. It will be appreciated that appropriate dosages of the compounds and
30 compositions of the invention may depend on the type and severity of the viral infection and can vary from patient to patient. Determining the optimal dosage will generally involve the balancing of the level of therapeutic benefit against any risk or deleterious side effects of the antiviral treatments of the present invention.

- Ideally, the active ingredient should be administered to achieve peak plasma
35 concentrations of the activ compound of from about 0.25 to about 100μM, preferably

about 0.5 to about 70 μ M, most preferably about 1 to about 50 μ M. This may be achieved, for example, by the intravenous injection of about 0.1 to about 5% solution of the active ingredient, optionally in saline, or orally administered, for example, as a tablet, capsule or syrup containing about 0.1 to about 250 mg per kilogram of the active ingredient.

- 5 Desirable blood levels may be maintained by a continuous infusion to provide about 0.01 to about 5.0 mg/kg/hour or by intermittent infusions containing about 0.4 to about 15 mg per kilogram of the active ingredient.

While it is possible for the active ingredient to be administered alone, it is preferable to present it as a pharmaceutical formulation comprising at least one active ingredient, as 10 defined above, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers therefor and optionally other therapeutic agents. Each carrier must be "acceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not injurious to the patient.

Formulations include those suitable for oral, rectal, nasal, topical (including 15 transdermal, buccal and sublingual), vaginal, parenteral (including subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous and intradermal) and pulmonary administration. The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by any methods well known in the art of pharmacy. Such methods include the step of bringing into association the active ingredient with the carrier which constitutes one or 20 more accessory ingredients. In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active ingredient with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then if necessary shaping the product.

Formulations of the present invention suitable for oral administration may be presented as discrete units such as capsules, cachets or tablets, each containing a 25 predetermined amount of the active ingredient; as a powder or granules; as a solution or suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous liquid; or as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion. The active ingredient may also be presented as a bolus, electuary or paste.

A tablet may be made by compression or moulding, optionally with one or more 30 accessory ingredients. Compressed tablets may be prepared by compressing in a suitable machine the active ingredient in a free-flowing form such as a powder or granules, optionally mixed with a binder (e.g., povidone, gelatin, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose), lubricant, inert diluent, preservative, disintegrant (e.g., sodium starch glycollate, cross-linked povidone, cross-linked sodium carboxymethyl cellulose) surface-active or dispersing 35 agent. Moulded tablets may be made by moulding in a suitable machine a mixture of the

powdered comp und moistened with an inert liquid diluent. The tablets may optionally be coated or scor d and may be formulated s as to provide slow or controlled release of the active ingredient therein using, for example, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose in varying proportions to provide the desired release profile. Tablets may optionally be provided with 5 an enteric coating, to provide release in parts of the gut other than the stomach.

Formulations suitable for topical administration in the mouth include lozenges comprising the active ingredient in a flavored basis, usually sucrose and acacia or tragacanth; pastilles comprising the active ingredient in an inert basis such as gelatin and glycerin, or sucrose and acacia; and mouthwashes comprising the active ingredient in a 10 suitable liquid carrier.

Pharmaceutical compositions for topical administration according to the present invention may be formulated as an ointment, cream, suspension, lotion, powder, solution, past, gel, spray, aerosol or oil. Alternatively, a formulation may comprise a patch or a dressing such as a bandage or adhesive plaster impregnated with active ingredients and 15 optionally one or more excipients or diluents.

For infections of the eye or other external tissues, e.g., mouth and skin, the formulations are preferably applied as a topical ointment or cream containing the active ingredient in an amount of, for example, about 0.075 to about 20% w/w, preferably about 0.2 to about 25% w/w and most preferably about 0.5 to about 10% w/w. When formulated 20 in an ointment, the active ingredient may be employed with either a paraffinic or a water-miscible ointment base. Alternatively, the active ingredients may be formulated in a cream with an oil-in-water cream base.

If desired, the aqueous phase of the cream base may include, for example, at least about 30% w/w of a polyhydric alcohol, i.e., an alcohol having two or more hydroxyl 25 groups such as propylene glycol, butane-1,3-diol, mannitol, sorbitol, glycerol and polyethylene glycol and mixtures thereof. The topical formulations may desirably include a compound which enhances absorption or penetration of the active ingredient through the skin or other affected areas. Examples of such dermal penetration enhancers include dimethylsulphoxide and related analogues.

The oily phase of the emulsions of this invention may be constituted from known 30 ingredients in an known manner. While this phase may comprise merely an emulsifier (otherwise known as an emulgent), it desirably comprises a mixture of at lease one emulsifier with a fat or an oil or with both a fat and an oil. Preferably, a hydrophilic emulsifier is included together with a lipophilic emulsifier which acts as a stabilizer. It is 35 also preferred to includ both an oil and a fat. Together, the emulsifier(s) with or without

stabilizer(s) make up the so-called emulsifying wax, and the wax together with the oil and/or fat make up the so-called emulsifying ointment base which forms the oily dispersed phase of the cream formulations.

Emulgents and emulsion stabilizers suitable for use in the formulation of the present invention include Tween 60, Span 80, cetostearyl alcohol, myristyl alcohol, glyceryl monostearate and sodium lauryl sulphate.

The choice of suitable oils or fats for the formulation is based on achieving the desired cosmetic properties, since the solubility of the active compound in most oils likely to be used in pharmaceutical emulsion formulations is very low. Thus the cream should preferably be a non-greasy, non-staining and washable product with suitable consistency to avoid leakage from tubes or other containers. Straight or branched chain, mono- or dibasic alkyl esters such as di-isoadipate, isocetyl stearate, propylene glycol diester of coconut fatty acids, isopropyl myristate, decyl oleate, isopropyl palmitate, butyl stearate, 2-ethylhexyl palmitate or a blend of branched chain esters known as Crodamol CAP may be used, the last three being preferred esters. These may be used alone or in combination depending on the properties required. Alternatively, high melting point lipids such as white soft paraffin and/or liquid paraffin or other mineral oils can be used.

Formulations suitable for topical administration to the eye also include eye drops wherein the active ingredient is dissolved or suspended in a suitable carrier, especially an aqueous solvent for the active ingredient. The active ingredient is preferably present in such formulation in a concentration of about 0.5 to about 20%, advantageously about 0.5 to about 10% particularly about 1.5% w/w.

Formulations for rectal administration may be presented as a suppository with a suitable base comprising, for example, cocoa butter or a salicylate.

Formulations suitable for vaginal administration may be presented as pessaries, tampons, creams, gels, pastes, foams or spray formulations containing in addition to the active ingredient, such carriers as are known in the art to be appropriate.

Formulations suitable for nasal administration, wherein the carrier is a solid, include a coarse powder having a particle size, for example, in the range of about 20 to about 500 microns which is administered in the manner in which snuff is taken, i.e., by rapid inhalation through the nasal passage from a container of the powder held close up to the nose. Suitable formulations wherein the carrier is a liquid for administration as, for example, a nasal spray or a nasal drops, include aqueous or oily solutions of the active ingredient.

- 20 -

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration include aqueous and non-aqueous isotonic sterile injection solutions which may contain anti-oxidants, buffers, bacteriostats and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient; and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions which may include 5 suspending agents and thickening agents, and liposomes or other microparticulate systems which are designed to target the compound to blood components or one or more organs. The formulations may be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose sealed containers, for example, ampoules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilized) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid carrier, for example water for 10 injections, immediately prior to use. Extemporaneous injection solutions and suspensions may be prepared from sterile powders, granules and tablets of the kind previously described.

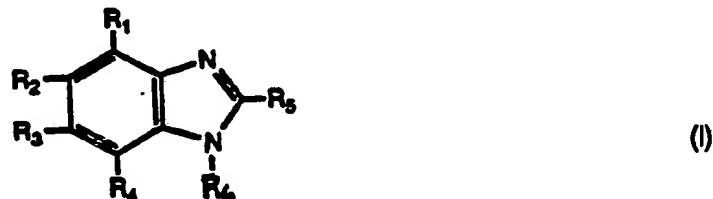
Preferred unit dosage formulations are those containing a daily dose or unit, daily subdose, as herein above-recited, or an appropriate fraction thereof, of an active 15 ingredient.

It should be understood that in addition to the ingredients particularly mentioned above, the formulations of this invention may include other agents conventional in the art having regard to the type of formulation in question, for example, those suitable of oral administration may include such further agents as sweeteners, thickeners and flavoring 20 agents.

Compounds of the formula of the present invention may also be presented for the use in the form of veterinary formulations, which may be prepared, for example, by methods that are conventional in the art.

C. Methods of Synthesis

25 The present invention also comprises methods of synthesis of polysubstituted benzimidazoles of the invention. The present invention provides a process for the preparation of polysubstituted benzimidazoles of the following formula:



wherein

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

20 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

25 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

- 23 -

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethyl xymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

5 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is OCH₃ and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH₂ and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

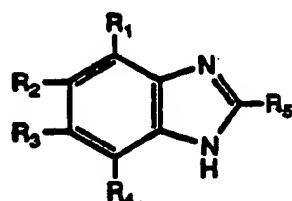
10 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

15 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

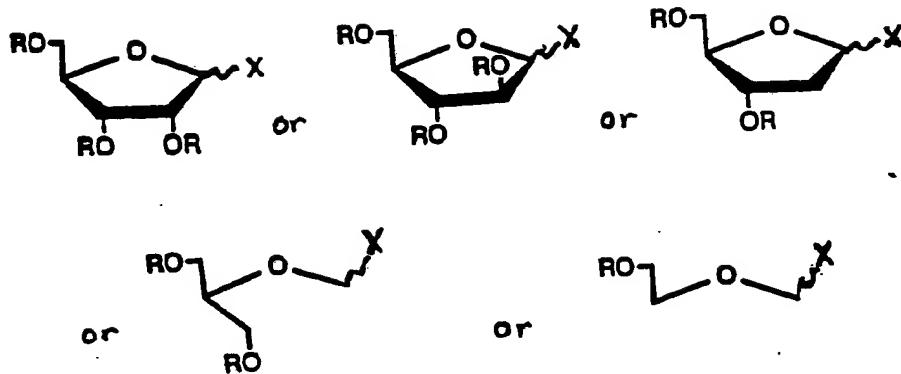
which comprises reacting a compound of the following formula:



(III)

wherein R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 and R_5 are defined as above, with a protected compound of formula 20 R_6^aX , shown below, in which R_6^a represents a protected carbohydrate or carbohydrate-like moiety and X represents a leaving group, and subsequently removing the protecting group from the moiety to form the desired compound.

The compound of formula R_6^aX is represented by the formula:



wherein X represents a leaving group such as a halo (e.g. chloro) or C₁₋₄ alkanoyloxy (e.g. acetoxy) group and R represents a hydroxy protecting group, for example, an acyl group such as C₁₋₄ alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl or aroyl, e.g. benzoyl, e.g. p-nitrobenzoyl and the like.

- The reaction of the compound of formula II with the compound of formula R₆X may
- 5 be effected in the presence of BSA, TMSOTf, BSTFA and the like, advantageously in a solvent such as acetonitrile, dichloroethane and the like.

The removal of the protecting groups in the above process according to the invention may be effected, for example, by treatment with methanolic ammonia, boron trihalide, sodium carbonate, potassium cyanide and the like.

- 10 Additionally, compounds of formula II may be reacted with compounds of the formula:



wherein R' = aralkyl

- to prepare a compound of general formula I, wherein R₆ is benzyl rather than a
15 carbohydrate or carbohydrate-like moiety, and wherein, e.g. R₁ is H, R₂, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H and R₅ is NH₂ or Cl.

- The compounds of the present invention can be synthesized in accordance with the representative procedures described *vide infra*. In general, the appropriate benzimidazole was prepared and then condensed with the appropriate precursor for the
20 ultimate R₆ group as represented by the schemes and tables of Figures 1 and 2. This furnished polysubstituted benzimidazoles which had potential antiviral activity, and were

also amenable toward subsequent chemical transformations to afford additional compounds. The solvents, reagents and reaction conditions for the preparation of some representative starting materials, intermediate and target compounds are presented in detail below. The compound numbering in this section and specification refers to the reaction scheme and table numbers of the compounds.

5

SPECIFIC EXAMPLES

2, 5, 6-Trichlorobenzimidazole(5)

Method A(5)

A solution of 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-one (5g, 2.5 mmole) in 75ml of POCl_3 was heated at reflux for 5 hr. HCl gas was passed into the mixture for the last 1/2 hr. Excess POCl_3 was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was decomposed with HCl (150 ml). The brown solid was removed by filtration and washed with H_2O (100 ml). The filtrate was made slowly basic with NH_4OH . After cooling, the precipitate was filtered, the precipitate was dissolved in MeOH and an insoluble material was removed by filtration. The filtrate was evaporated under diminished pressure to dryness. The residue was applied to a column of silica gel (Kiesel Gel 70-230 mesh) and eluted with CH_2Cl_2 . The fractions containing the product (5) were combined, and evaporated to dryness. Yield 1.36g (25.0%).

10

15

20

25

30

35

Method B(5)

A CuCl_2 saturated aqueous solution (15 ml) was diluted to 25 ml with water. Sodium nitrite (1.035g, 5 mmole) was dissolved in 5 ml of water and slowly added to the CuCl_2 solution. After two minutes, 2-amino-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole(4) (0.935g, 5 mmole) was slowly added in small portions. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr. Excess CuCl_2 solution was added and the mixture was heated on a steam bath for 1 hr. The aqueous solution was then extracted with ethyl-acetate (3×50 ml) and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried with MgSO_4 , concentrated, and separated on a silica column using 2% MeOH/ CHCl_3 to afford 545 mg (49.5%) of 2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole(5). $^1\text{H NMR}$, TLC, and MS analysis were identical to the same compound obtained by Method A.

30

35

Method C(5)

5,6-Dichlorobenzimidazole-2-thione (3) was prepared according to the method of Van Allen and Deacon, as described in Van Allen, J.A. et al., Org. Syn. IV:569. Carbon disulfide (84.5 mL, 107.0 g, 1.4 M) was added to a solution of KOH (92.4 g, of 85% purity, 78.5 g, 1.4 M) in EtOH (1.5 L) and the resulting yellow solution was stirred without heating until a white precipitate was obtained. To obtain the product in good yield, potassium

ethyl xanthate must be prepared *in situ*. 4,5-Dichloro-1,2-phenylenediamine (201.8 g, 1.14 M) dissolved in absolute EtOH (3 L) was then added and the reaction mixture was heated under reflux for 24 hr. After cooling to room temperature the solvent was removed (caution - stench) under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in H₂O (3.0 L). The solution 5 was adjusted to pH 2 with AcOH to precipitate the product. This solid was collected by filtration, washed with H₂O, and the solid was dried under reduced pressure at 60°C for 48 hr to yield 236.4 g (94.6%) of 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-thione (3), MP: 328-330°C. Also commercially available from Maybridge Chemical Company, Ltd., lit. MP given as >320°C. TLC: R_f = 0.62 (CHCl₃-MeOH, 10:1; SiO₂).

- 10 To a five liter three neck roundbottom flask fitted with an overhead stirrer and a reflux condenser was added H₂O (1500 mL) and sodium percarbonate commercially available from Fluka Corporation. (209.3 g, 1.2 M, 90% pure). For a leading reference see Ando, T. et al., *Chem. Letters* 665-666 (1986). After a solution was obtained, 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-thione (3) (131.5 g, 0.6 M) was added in several portions.
- 15 (Caution: exothermic with foaming). After stirring overnight, without heating, an additional 21 g of sodium percarbonate was added and the mixture was heated under reflux until a clear solution was obtained. The hot solution was treated with charcoal, filtered through Celite, then cooled to 25°C in an ice bath. With cooling, concentrated HCl was added very carefully until pH 1 was obtained. The product precipitated as a white crystalline solid.
- 20 After storing at 5°C for 24 hr, the precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with cold H₂O (500 mL) then dried at 80°C under reduced pressure for 20 hr to yield 135.0 g (84%) of 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-sulfonic acid (9). MP: 353-354°C (eff.). TLC: R_f = 0.27 (CHCl₃-MeOH, 4:1, SiO₂).

- A modified procedure of Balli and Kersting procedure described in Balli, H. et al., 25 *Justus Liebigs Am. Chem.* 1:647 (1961), was followed. A one liter three neck roundbottom flask was fitted with an overhead stirrer and a reflux condenser connected to a gas scrubber. To the flask was added in order, phosphorus oxychloride (80 mL), phosphorus pentachloride (104.0 g, 0.5 M) and 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-sulfonic acid (9) (66.8 g, 0.25 M). The resulting mixture was carefully heated until an exothermic reaction occurred.
- 30 The heat source was removed. When the reaction had subsided, the mixture was carefully heated to reflux. After all gas evolution had ceased (5 hr) the mixture was protected from moisture and allowed to cool to 25°C. The resulting thick slurry was carefully added to cold H₂O (2.5 L) containing some ice. Ice was added as needed. The aqueous mixture was allowed to stand for 18 hr at 5°C while the product precipitated. The pH of the mixture 35 was adjusted to pH 8 with conc. NH₄OH then acidified to pH 3 with glacial AcOH. The

- 27 -

- solid was collected by filtration, washed with H₂O, then dried on the filter. The material was dissolved in THF, treated with charcoal, then filtered through Celite. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The solid residue was dried at 60°C under reduced pressure for 18 hr to yield 39.9 g (72%) of 2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (5). MP: 5 212-214°C (eff. then solidifies). See Kawashima, E. et al., *Nucleic Acid Chemistry: Improved and New Synthetic Procedures, Methods and Techniques*, eds. Townsend, L.B. et al., Wiley Interscience New York, NY, Part IV p. 96 (1991). TLC: R_f = 0.89 (EtOAc; SiO₂). Recrystallization from benzene-hexane raises the melting point to 223-224°C.
- 2-Amino-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (4).
- 10 A modified procedure of the procedure described by Leonard, N.J., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 69:2459 (1947), was followed. Cyanogen bromide (136.6 g, 1.3 M, 260 mL of a 5 M solution in CH₃CN from) was added to a solution of MeOH (250 mL) in H₂O (1500 mL). 4,5- Dichloro-1,2-phenylenediamine (available commercially from Aldrich Chemical Company) (222.4 g, 1.26 M) was then added in five portions, as the initial reaction is 15 exothermic. The reaction mixture was stirred without heating for 80 hr. then treated with activated charcoal (5 g). The 80 hr time period was for convenience alone, since the reaction is probably complete within 24 hr. After stirring for two hrs, the reaction mixture was filtered through Celite. The filter cake was washed with MeOH (250 mL) and H₂O (750 mL) and the filter cake was discarded. The filtrate was diluted with H₂O (1.5 L), adjusted 20 to pH 10 with conc. NH₄OH (1750 mL) and then allowed to stand overnight at 5°C. The precipitate (yellow leaflets) was collected by filtration, washed with H₂O and then dried under reduced pressure at 50°C for 60 hr. Crude yield: 265 g. This product was purified by recrystallization from CH₃CN to yield: 205.6 g (80.7%) of 4. MP: 264-266°C. TLC: R_f = 0.22 (CHCl₃-MeOH), 10:1; SiO₂). See Horner, J.K. et al., *J. Med. Chem.* 11:946-949 25 (1968), lit. MP: 260-262°C. As an alternative, the crude material is dissolved in absolute ethanol, treated with activated charcoal, and the solution diluted with an equal volume of H₂O and stored at 5°C for 18-24 hr.
- 2-Bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (7)
- Method A(7)
- 30 2-Amino-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (3 g, 16 mmole) was suspended in 150 ml of water and brought into solution with 2 ml of HBr. Sodium nitrite (3.3 g, 55 mmole) was then added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr. Excess CuBr₂ was then added and the mixture was heated on a steam bath for 1 hr. The aqueous solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 ml), dried with MgSO₄, concentrated, and 35 crystallized from ethyl ether to give 1.13 g (26%) 12-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (7).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 7.81 ppm (s, 2H), 13.62 (s, 1H). GC/MS: m/e 266, 185, 158, 150, 133, 124, 107, 97, 88, 73, 62, 52, 37.

Method B (7)

This preparation was based on work reported by Doyle et al., *J. Org. Chem.* 5 42:2426 (1977). A two liter three neck roundbottom flask was fitted with an overhead stirrer and a reflux condenser with an attached bubbler. Acetone (225 mL), that had been filtered through anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and isopentyl nitrite (25.1 mL, 29.2 g, 0.25 M) were added and the resulting solution stirred for 5 min. CuBr₂ (23.5 g, 0.105 M) was then added and stirring was continued for an additional 75 min to give a yellow-black 10 solution. Powdered 2-amino-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (3) (20.2 g, 0.1 M) was added in one portion and the mixture stirred without heating. Gas evolution was almost immediate and very vigorous; the reaction was exothermic to the point that a gentle reflux was maintained. During this time, an orange solid began to separate. After 25 min, the rate 15 of reflux began to decrease, and after 35 min was very slow. The mixture was then heated under reflux until gas evolution had almost ceased. The mixture was cooled for 20 min in an ice bath then treated with 48% aqueous HBr (100 mL) giving a black suspension. After stirring for 20 min, H₂O was added and an orange precipitate was obtained. Stirring was continued for 30 min and then the precipitate was removed by filtration. (Caution - strong lacrymator, probably bromoacetone, present). The solid was suspended in H₂O and the 20 mixture adjusted to pH 7 with saturated NaHCO₃. The solid was collected by filtration washed with H₂O then dried at 50°C under reduced pressure for 18 hr to yield 20.9 g (79%) of crude (7). TLC: R_f = 0.0, 0.36 (5,6-dichlorobenzimidazol-2-one), 0.80 (7) (EtOAc-hexanes, 5:1; SiO₂). TLC: R_f = EtOAc-hexanes, 5:1; SiO₂). NMR: (DMSO-d₆) δ 7.804, s, 2H, H4, H7. UV (EtOH): pH7 224, 253, 260, 292, 299; pH1 211, 251, 289, 298; 25 pH11 221, 294, 301.

2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (42).

To a suspension of (5) (62.013 g, 280 mmol) in 1.4 L of dry MeCN under argon, was added 70 mL (280 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min to give a clear solution. To this solution were added 30 1,2,3,5-Tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose (89.096 g, 280 mmol) and then 60 mL (310 mmol) of TMSOTf was added dropwise over 20 min. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued at room temperature for an additional 30 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 4 L of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with 1:1 saturated aqueous NaHCO₃/saturated aqueous NaCl (3 x 2 L), dried (with Na₂SO₄, 100 g), 35 decolorized (activated charcoal, 8 g) and filtered through Celite. The filtrate was

evaporated and the residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 116.88 g (3 crops, 87%) of (42) as white needles. The recrystallization was accomplished by heating the crude product in MeOH at reflux on a steam bath for a few minutes and then decanting the supernatant while hot into a clean beaker. Immediate crystallization resulted. A second portion of fresh MeOH was added to the remaining solid and the whole process was repeated until all of the solid was dissolved. MP: 145-146 °C. This product was pure by ¹H NMR.

2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (45)

Method A (45)

2,5,6-Trichlorobenzimidazole (700 mg, 0.0032 moles) was dissolved in acetonitrile and BSTFA (1 ml, 0.0038 moles) was added. The mixture was heated at 75°C for 20 minutes. TMSTf (1 ml, 0.0051 moles) and 1-O-acetyl-2,3,5-tri-O-benzoyl- β -D-ribofuranose (1.9 g, 0.0038 moles) were added while heating was continued for 45 min. The acetonitrile was removed under reduced pressure and the protected nucleoside was separated on a silica column, eluting with chloroform. The benzoyl protecting groups were removed by overnight treatment at room temperature with methanolic ammonia. The nucleoside was separated on a column using 50% EtOAc/hexane and then 10% MeOH/CHCl₃. The isolated compound was recrystallized from methanol. Yield: (74%); MP: 185-186°C; TLC (10% MeOH/CHCl₃): R_f = 0.20; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 3.68 ppm (q, 2H), 4.00 (d, 1H), 4.12 (t, 1H), 4.40 (q, 1H), 5.28 (d, 1H), 5.41 (t, 1H), 5.49 (d, 1H), 5.57 (d, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H), 8.55 (s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆, Broad band decoupling): d 61.08 ppm, 69.80, 71.70, 86.47, 89.16, 114.93, 120.04, 125.77, 125.97, 132.30, 140.96, 142.16; MS (Fast Atom Bombardment): m/e (M⁺6) 359, (M⁺4) 357, (M⁺2) 355, (M⁺) 353, 319, 285, 263, 221, 187, 177, 133, 115, 103, 97, 85.

Method B (45)

To a solution of Na₂CO₃ (23.32 g, 220 mmol) in 440 mL of H₂O were added successively 2.0 L of EtOH, 2.0 L of MeOH, and 105.5 g (220 mmol) of 42. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr. AcOH (26.44 mL, 462 mmol) was added and stirring was continued at room temperature for 20 min. The reaction mixture was filtered. The solid product was triturated with H₂O (800 mL, 20 min), MeOH (500 mL, 30 min), and then recrystallized from EtOH/MeOH (1 L/1 L) to give 52.4 g of 45 as white crystals {2 crops, the 2nd crop (2.8 g) was obtained by evaporation of the mother liquid and recrystallization of the residue two more times from EtOH/MeOH}. Recrystallization was accomplished by dissolving the crude product in a minimum amount of boiling EtOH, diluting it immediately with an equal amount of hot MeOH and allowing it to slowly cool.

The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was triturated with H₂O (500 mL, 20 min), MeOH (500 mL, 30 min), and then recrystallized twice from EtOH/MeOH to give an additional 15.34 g of 45 {2 crops, the 2nd crop (1.95 g) was obtained by evaporation of the mother liquid and recrystallization of the residue two more times from EtOH/MeOH}.

- 5 The total of 45 was 67.74 g (87%). MP: 166-168°C.

2-Bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (52a)

To a suspension of (7) (47.867 g, 180 mmol) in 540 mL of dry MeCN, was added 45 mL (180 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min to give a clear solution. A small amount of solid impurity remained unslilylated, 10 believed to be 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazol-2-one from the starting material(7). 1,2,3,5-Tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose (60.14 g, 189 mmole) was added to this solution and then TMSOTf (38.267 mL 198 mmol) was added dropwise over 20 min. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued at room temperature for 30 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 2 L of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with 1:1 saturated 15 aqueous NaHCO₃/saturated aqueous NaCl (1.5 L x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄, 100 g), decolorized (activated charcoal, 6 g), and filtered through Celite. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 82.21 g (4 crops, 87%) of 52a as white needles. MP: 140-144 °C. This product was pure by ¹H NMR.

2-Bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (52)

- 20 Method A (52)

2-Bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (7) (1g, 3.8 mmole) was dissolved in dry acetonitrile (150 ml) and stirred in an inert atmosphere at 60°C. BSA (1.03 ml, 4.2 mmole) was added and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. 1,2,3,5-Tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose (1.21g, 3.8 mmole) and TMSTf (0.81 ml, 4.2 mmole) were added to the clear 25 solution and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. An additional quantity of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-D-ribofuranose (1.21g, 3.8 mmole) and TMSTf (0.81 ml, 4.2 mmole) were added to the clear solution and the mixture was allowed to stir at 60°C for 1 hr. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and separated on a silica column to give the protected 2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole nucleoside. ¹³C NMR (CDCl₃): δ 170.26 ppm, 169.50, 168.99, 142.97, 132.32, 130.71, 128.09, 128.06, 121.09, 112.98, 88.09, 80.76, 71.01, 69.50, 62.87, 20.97, 20.49, 20.13. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.02 ppm (s, 3H), 2.16 (s, 3H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.46 (ddd, 2H), 5.43 (dd, 1H), 5.48 (t, 1H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H). The protected nucleoside was stirred overnight at room 30 temperature in a methanolic ammonia solution, concentrated, and suspended in methanol (3 x 25 ml) to yield 2-bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole nucleoside in

137%. ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 142.57 ppm, 132.60, 132.57, 125.76, 119.88, 114.73, 90.21, 86.35, 71.55, 69.76, 61.05. ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 3.69 ppm (m, 2H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 4.11 (m, 1H), 4.41 (q, 1H), 5.27 (d, 1H), 5.40 (t, 1H), 5.45 (d, 1H), 5.87 (d, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 8.56 (s, 1H). MS (FAB): m/e 399, 351, 319, 285, 267, 219, 187, 153, 133, 103, 85.

5 Method B (52)

To a solution of Na₂CO₃ (2.12 g, 20 min) in 40 mL of H₂O, were added successively 180 mL of EtOH, 180 mL of MeOH, and 10.483 g (20 mmol) of 51a. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hr. AcOH (2.404 mL, 42 mmol) was added and stirring was continued at room temperature for 10 min. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the solid product was triturated with H₂O (200 mL, 20 min), MeOH (100 mL, 30 min), and then recrystallized from EtOH/MeOH, by dissolving the crude product in a minimum amount of boiling EtOH, diluting it immediately with an equal amount of hot MeOH and allowing it to slowly cool, to give 6.87 g of 52 as white crystals {2 crops, the 2nd crop (0.609 g) was obtained by evaporation of the mother liquor and recrystallization of the residue two more times from EtOH/MeOH}. MP: 162-162 °C.

15 2-Chloro-5,6-dinitro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (60)

To a mixture of 0.541 g (2.23 mmol) of 2-chloro-5,6-dinitrobenzimidazole in 12 mL of MeCN, was added 0.558 mL (2.23 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 15 min to give a clear solution. This solution was treated with the above MeCN solution of 2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-ribofuranosyl chloride and 0.56 mL (2.90 mmol) of TMSOTf at 75°C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.2 x 18 cm, eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane). Evaporation of fractions 10-14 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.502 g (35%) of 60 as a syrup. MS: (FAB) m/e 645 (1%, MH⁺=645). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.50, 8.49 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 7.34, 6.90 (2 x m, 15, 3 x Ph), 6.09 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.0 Hz), 4.73 ~ 4.27 (m, 9, 2'-H, 3'-H, 4'-H, and 3 x PhCH₂), 3.77 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{4',5'}=2.0 Hz, J_{5',5''}=11.0 Hz), 3.65 (dd, 1, 5''-H, J_{4',5''}=2.5 Hz).

30 2-Chloro-5,6-dinitro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (61)

To a solution of 0.464 g (0.719 mmol) of 60 in 12 mL of CH₂Cl₂, was added dropwise 8.4 mL of 1 M BCl₃ at -78°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 2 hr and then at -40°C for 2 hr. MeOH (5 mL) was added and stirring was continued at -40°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (75 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with cold H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL),

- dried (Na_2SO_4), and evap rated. The residue was coevaporated with MeOH (3 x) and then suspended in a small amount of CHCl_3 for a few hours. The solid pr duct was filtered to give 0.209 g of 61. This sample was contaminated by a small amount f 2-chloro-5,6-dinitrobenzimidazole. A part of the sample (0.18 g) was purified on a silica column (2.4 x 10 cm, eluted with pure EtOAc). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and crystallization by addition of CHCl_3 gave 0.084 g of 61 as a white solid. MP: 132-135°C. MS: (EI) m/e 374.0276 (1%, $M^+=374.0265$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 9.18 (s, 1, 7-H), 8.60 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.00 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'}=7.5$ Hz), 5.59 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2',2'OH}=6.0$ Hz), 5.52 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 5.38 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 4.01 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'}=5.5$ Hz), 4.16 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'}=2.0$ Hz), 4.07 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5''}=2.5$ Hz), 3.73 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, $J_{5',5''}=12.0$ Hz). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 146.55 (C2), 142.63 (C3a), 138.90, 138.60 (C5 and C6), 134.12 (C7a), 116.67 (C4), 111.62 (C7), 89.98 (C1'), 86.91 (C4'), 72.86 (C2'). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{11}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_8$: C, 38.47; H, 2.96; N, 14.95. Found: C, 38.46; H, 2.98; N, 14.62.
- 15 **1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (80)**

To a suspension of 1.362 g (6.15 mmol) of 2,4,6-trichlorobenzimidazole in 31 mL of MeCN, was added 1.52 mL (6.15 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 15 min to give a clear solution. This solution was treated with 2.153 g (6.675 mmol) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranose and 1.426 mL (7.380 mmol) of TMSOTf at 20 80°C for 1 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (150 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO_3 solution (150 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (150 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated. The residue was coevaporated with MeOH and then suspended in 50 mL of hot MeOH. The suspension was cooled, filtered, and the solid product was washed with MeOH to give 2.103 g of 80 as white crystals (This product 25 showed one spot on TLC). The mother liquor was evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.5 x 20 cm, eluted with CHCl_3 and 0.5% MeOH/ CHCl_3). Evaporation of fractions 20-24 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave an additional 0.258 g of 80 as white crystals. The total yield of 80 was 2.361 g (80%). MP: 198-200°C. MS: (EI) m/e 480.0069 (4%, for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{17}^{35}\text{Cl}_2^{37}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_7$; $M^+=480.0072$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.89 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,5}=2.0$ Hz), 7.58 (d, 1, 5-H), 6.26 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'}=7.0$ Hz), 5.54 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'}=7.0$ Hz), 5.44 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'}=4.5$ Hz), 4.48, 4.38 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.14, 2.02 (2 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 169.84, 169.37, 169.09 (3 x COCH_3), 140.91 (C2), 137.39 (C3a), 134.14 (C7a), 128.47 (C6), 123.66 (C4), 123.25 (C5), 111.06 (C7), 86.91 (C1'), 79.58 (C4'), 70.54

- 33 -

(C2'), 68.55 (C3'), 62.47 (C5'), 20.48, 20.19, 19.90 (3 x COCH₃). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₈H₁₇Cl₃N₂O₇: C, 45.07; H, 3.57; N, 5.84. Found: C, 45.08; H, 3.62; N, 5.87.

2,4,6-Trichloro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (81)

A mixture of 0.130 g (0.271 mmol) of 80 in 5 mL of conc. NH₄OH/dioxane (1:1 by volume) was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 1 day. Volatile materials were removed by evaporation and coevaporation with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The resulting solid was absorbed on silica gel and was chromatographed on a silica column (2 x 5 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2%, 3% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 23-39 (5 mL per fraction) gave a white solid. This solid was washed with H₂O, dried to give 46 mg (48%) of 80 as a white solid. MP: 165-167°C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.36 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,5}=2.0 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1, 5-H), 5.90 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2}=8.0 Hz), 5.49 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2',2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.38 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.28 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.41 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=2.0 Hz), 4.02 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5''}=2.5 Hz), 3.70 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, J_{5',5''}=12.0 Hz). ¹³H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 141.64 (C2), 137.50 (C3a), 134.17 (C7a), 128.02 (C6), 123.22 (C4), 122.77 (C5), 112.56 (C7), 89.35 (C1'), 86.52 (C4'), 71.71 (C2'), 69.70 (C3'), 61.02 (C5'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁Cl₃N₂O₄: C, 40.76; H, 3.14; N, 7.92. Found: C, 40.74; H, 3.37; N, 7.71.

2-Iodo-5,6-dichloro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (83a)

2-Amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole nucleoside (43) (50 mg, 0.1 mmole) was added to 3 mL of diiodomethane and amyl nitrite (0.13 ml, 1 mmole) under an inert atmosphere and heated to 50°C for 1 hr. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and chromatographed on a silica gel column to give one product which was treated with methanolic ammonia for 18 hr. The product was isolated, recrystallized and characterized as compound 83a. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 3.71 (m, 2H), 4.07 (m, 1H), 4.12 (m, 1H), 4.40 (q, 1H), 5.23 (m, 1H), 5.37 (m, 2H), 5.82 (d, 1H), 7.89 (s, 1H), 8.52 (s, 1H). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 145.33 ppm, 132.51, 125.26, 125.18, 119.51, 114.22, 110.32, 92.11, 86.22, 71.47, 69.99, 61.11. MP: 180-182°C. UV λ_{max} nm (ε × 10⁴): (pH 7) 230 (.490), 259 (.216), 292 (.277) 302 (.305); (pH 1) 230 (.342), 258 (.095), 294 (.301), 303 (.313); (pH 11) 228 (.560), 258 (.198), 292 (.249), 302 (.267). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁Cl₂IN₂O₄ 1.5CH₃OH: C, 32.88; H, 3.47; N, 5.68. Found: C, 33.32; H, 3.21; N, 5.80.

2-Chloro-4,5-dibromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (84)

To a stirred mixture of 1.228 g (5.498 mmol) of CuBr₂ and 0.654 mL (4.949 mmol) of 90% t-BuONO in 10 mL of CH₃CN, was added dropwise a solution of 1.170 g (2.748

mmol) of 5-amino-2-chloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole in 3 mL of CH₃CN. After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (100 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (100 mL), dried 5 (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (4.1 x 30 cm, eluted with CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 59-78 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.600 g (38%) of 84 as a white solid. MP 202-203°C. MS (EI) m/e 565.9109 (4%, M⁺=565.9091). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.74 (2x d, 2, 6-H and 7-H, J_{6,7}=8.5 Hz), 6.26 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=6.5 Hz), 5.53 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.42 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3,4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.42.

2-Chloro-4,5-dibromo-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (85)

A solution of 0.529 g (0.930 mmol) of 84 in 25 mL of NH₃/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 hr. Volatile materials were removed by evaporation and coevaporation with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The resulting 15 solid was recrystallized from MeOH/H₂O to give 0.316 g (2 crops, 77%) of 85 as white crystals. MP: 167-169°C. MS: (Cl) m/e 440.8837 (20%, MH⁺=440.8852). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.05 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,6}=8.5 Hz), 7.59 (d, 1, 6-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.5 Hz), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2,2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.28 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3,3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.27 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5,5'OH}=5.0 Hz), 4.40 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.13 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3,4'}=2.0 Hz), 4.00 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4,5'}=J_{4,5''}=3.5 Hz), 3.68 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, J_{5,5''}=12.0 Hz). ¹³H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 141.70 (C2), 141.58 (C3a), 132.21 (C7a), 127.42 (C6), 118.06 (C5), 114.08 (C4), 113.87 (C7), 89.45 (C1'), 86.34 (C4'), 71.74 (C2'), 69.62 (C3'), 61.07 (C5'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁Br₂CIN₂O₄: C, 32.57; H, 2.51; N, 6.33. Found: C, 32.70; H, 2.33; N, 6.33.

25 2-Chloro-5,6-diiodobenzimidazole (41)

Compound 6-amino-2-chloro-5-iodobenzimidazole (26a) (0.190 g, 0.647 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of conc. H₂SO₄ /ice-H₂O (2 mL/3 mL) at 0°C. To this mixture, was added dropwise a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (0.134 g, 1.942 mmol/5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr. A solution of KI/H₂O (0.537 g/5 mL) was 30 added dropwise and stirring was continued at room temperature for 3 h and then 100°C for 15 min. The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was washed with Na₂S₂O₃/H₂O (1 g/50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.169 g of a yellowish crystalline compound. The mother liquor was 35 evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2 x 4 cm, eluted

successively with 1%, 2% M OH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 4-6 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave an additional 0.040 g of product. The total yield was 0.209 g (80%). MP: 228-229°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 403.8064 (100%, M⁺=403.8074). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.50 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 8.11 (s, 2, 4-H and 7-H). Anal. Calcd. for

5 C₇H₃ClI₂N₂: C, 20.79; H, 0.75; N, 6.93. Found: C, 20.73; H, 0.83; N, 6.74.

2-Chloro-5,6-diiodo-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (107)

To a suspension of 0.230 g (0.569 mmol) of 2-chloro-5,6-diiodobenzimidazole (41) in 5 mL of MeCN, was added 0.140 mL (0.569 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 15 min to give a clear solution. This solution was treated with 0.199 g (0.626 mmol) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose and 0.132 mL (0.683 mmol) of TMSOTf at 80°C for 45 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.4 x 15 cm, eluted with CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 18-25 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.157 g (42%) of the blocked nucleoside as white crystals. MP: 120-123°C. MS: (EI) m/e 661.8823 (14%, M⁺=661.8814). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.34 (s, 1, 7-H), 8.25 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.22 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.54 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.41 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.46, 4.36 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.16, 2.14, 2.01 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 169.94, 169.45, 169.15 (3 x COCH₃), 142.54 (C3a), 140.67 (C2), 134.08 (C7a), 128.88 (C4), 121.48 (C7), 101.98, 101.32 (C5 and C6), 86.53 (C1'), 79.48 (C4'), 70.51 (C2'), 68.71 (C3'), 62.57 (C5'), 20.90, 20.27, 19.98 (3 x COCH₃). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₈H₁₇ClI₂N₂O₇: C, 32.63; H, 2.59; N, 4.23. Found: C, 32.81; H, 2.83; N, 4.25. This compound was deprotected to afford compound 107.

25 2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(2-deoxy-3,5-di-O-p-toluyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)benzimidazole (110)

To a suspension of 4.43 g (20 mmol) of 2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (5) in 100 mL of dry MeCN, was add portionwise 1.2 g (30 mmol) of 60% NaH in oil at room temperature. After the addition had been completed, the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 min. to give a nearly clear yellowish solution. To this solution, 30 compound 3,5-di-O-p-toluyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl chloride (9.332 g, 24 mmol) was added portionwise over 20 min and stirring was continued at room temperature for an additional 2 h. The reaction mixture was filtered and the solid was washed with portions of EtOAc (~300 mL). The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in the EtOAc washings. This EtOAc solution was washed with half sat. NaCl solution (150 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was added to 100 mL of MeOH, the

- mixture was heated at reflux temperature for 5 min. and was then allowed to cool to room temperature. Filtration of the resulting suspension and washing the solid with portions of MeOH gave 10.21 g (89%, 2 crops) of 110 as white crystals. MP: 168-169°C. MS: (EI) m/e 572.0664 (0.5%, M⁺=572.0673). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.04, 7.94 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 5 7.97, 7.86, 7.37, 7.29 (4 x d, 8, Ph, J=8.0 Hz), 6.56 (dd, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.5 Hz, J_{1',2'}=6.0 Hz), 5.75 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',2'}=8.0 Hz, J_{3',2'}=2.0 Hz, J_{3',4'}=3.5 Hz), 4.72 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5',4'}=3.5 Hz, J_{5',5'}=12.0 Hz), 4.69 (dd, 1, 5''-H, J_{5'',4'}=5.0 Hz), 4.61 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.02 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',2''}=14.5 Hz), 2.72 (m, 1, 2''-H), 2.40, 2.36 (2 x s, 6, 2 x Me). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 165.48, 165.34 (2 x p-MePhCO), 144.05, 143.81 (2 x p-MePhCO), 141.38 (C2), 140.81 (C3a), 132.43 (C7a), 129.48, 129.24 (2 x p-MePhCO), 126.47, 126.39, 126.23, 125.91 (2 x p-MePhCO, C6, and C5), 120.29 (C4), 113.43 (C7), 85.19 (C1'), 80.07 (C4'), 73.52 (C3'), 63.72 (C5'), 35.75 (C2'), 21.14, 21.09 (2 x p-MePhCO). Anal. Calcd. for C₂₈H₂₃Cl₃N₂O₅: C, 58.60; H, 4.04; N, 4.88. Found: C, 58.35; H, 4.09; N, 4.83.
- 15 2,5,6-Trichlorobenzimidazole-1-2-deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl (111)
- A suspension of 7.30 g (12.721 mmol) of 110 and 8.284 g (127.21 mmol) of KCN in 255 mL of 90% aq. EtOH was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The resulting solid was triturated successively with H₂O (50 mL x 3), hexane (50 mL x 3), CHCl₃ (50 mL), and was then 20 recrystallized from MeOH to give 3.027 g (70%, 2 crops) of 111 as white crystals. MP: 178-180°C. MS: (EI) m/e 335.9831 (12%, M⁺=335.9835). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.44 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.94 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.35 (dd, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=9.0 Hz, J_{1',2'}=6.0 Hz), 5.42 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.24 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=5.0 Hz), 4.43 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',2'}=7.0 Hz, J_{3',2'}=2.0 Hz, J_{3',4'}=2.5 Hz), 3.90 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=3.0 Hz), 3.70 (dd, 2, 5'-H), 2.51 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',2''}=13.5 Hz), 2.19 (m, 1, 2''-H). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 141.21 (C2), 140.95 (C3a), 132.27 (C7a), 125.91, 125.67 (C5 and C6), 120.02 (C4), 114.77 (C7), 87.68 (C4'), 85.70 (C1'), 69.99 (C3'), 60.86 (C5'), 38.96 (C2'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁Cl₃N₂O₃: C, 42.69; H, 3.28; N, 8.30. Found: C, 42.40; H, 3.36; N, 8.07.
- 2-Bromo-5,6-dichloro-1-(deoxy-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)benzimidazole (112)
- 30 To a suspension of 1.55 g (5.829 mmol) of 2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (7) in 30 mL of dry MeCN, was added portionwise 0.35 g (8.750 mmol) of 60% NaH in oil at room temperature. After the addition had been completed, the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 min to give a nearly clear yellowish solution. To this solution, the appropriate carbohydrate (2.72 g, 6.995 mmol) was added portionwise over 20 min and 35 stirring was continued at room temperature for an additional 2.5 h. The reaction mixture

was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), filtered and the solid was washed with portions of EtOAc (20 mL). This EtOAc solution was washed with half sat. NaCl solution (100 mL x 2), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (4 x 16 cm, eluted with pure chloroform). Evaporation of fractions 18-91 and recrystallization of the residue from EtOH gave 2.927 g (81%, 2 crops) of the protected nucleoside as white crystals. MP: 157-159°C. MS: (EI) m/e 616.0153 (0.2%, $M^+ = 616.0167$). ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): δ 8.02, 7.95 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 7.96, 7.86, 7.37, 7.29 (4 x d, 8, Ph, $J=8.0$ Hz), 6.52 (dd, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'}=9.0$ Hz, $J_{1',2''}=6.0$ Hz), 5.76 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',2'}=8.0$ Hz, $J_{3',2''}=2.0$ Hz, $J_{3',4'}=3.5$ Hz), 4.71 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, $J_{5',4'}=4.0$ Hz, $J_{5'',4'}=4.5$ Hz, $J_{5',5''}=12.0$ Hz), 4.63 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.00 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',2''}=14.5$ Hz), 2.70 (m, 1, 2''-H), 2.40, 2.36 (2 x s, 6, 2 x Me). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO- d_6): δ 165.45, 165.27 (2 x p-MePhCO), 144.00, 143.75 (2 x p-MePhCO), 142.44 (C3a), 132.49 (C7a), 131.46 (C2), 129.40, 129.19 (2 x p-MePhCO), 126.43, 126.36, 126.03, 125.77 (2 x p-MePhCO, C6, and C5), 120.12 (C4), 113.29 (C7), 86.27 (C1'), 80.97 (C4'), 73.50 (C3'), 63.71 (C5'), 35.81 (C2'), 21.08, 21.03 (2 x p-MePhCO). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{23}\text{BrCl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_6$: C, 54.39; H, 3.75; N, 4.53. Found: C, 54.54; H, 3.59; N, 4.44.

A suspension of 0.618 g (1.0 mmol) of the protected nucleoside and 0.330 g (5.0 mmol) of KCN in 20 mL of 90% aq. EtOH was stirred at room temperature for 5 days. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The resulting solid was triturated successively with H_2O (10 mL x 3), CHCl_3 (10 mL x 3), and was then recrystallized from EtOH to give 0.300 g (79%, 3 crops) of 112 as white crystals. MP: 187-188°C. MS: (EI) m/e 379.9332 (6%, $M^+ = 379.9330$). ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): δ 8.48 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.93 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.33 (dd, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'}=9.0$ Hz, $J_{1',2''}=5.5$ Hz), 5.48 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3''}\text{OH}=4.0$ Hz), 5.31 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5''}\text{OH}=4.5$ Hz), 4.43 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',2'}=6.5$ Hz, $J_{3',2''}=1.5$ Hz), 3.91 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.71 (m, 2, 5'-H), 2.50 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',2''}=13.5$ Hz), 2.15 (m, 1, 2''-H). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO- d_6): δ 142.56 (C3a), 132.49 (C7a), 131.39 (C2), 125.75, 125.56 (C5 and C6), 119.83 (C4), 114.66 (C7), 87.68 (C4'), 86.94 (C1'), 70.02 (C3'), 60.86 (C5'), 39.00 (C2'). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{11}\text{BrCl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$: C, 37.73; H, 2.90; N, 7.33. Found: C, 38.18; H, 2.80; N, 7.30.

30 5-Bromo-2,6-dichloro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (95)

To a suspension of 0.319 g (1.0 mmol) of 2,6-dichloro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (67) in 10 mL of H_2O , was added dropwise a sat. solution of $\text{Br}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O}$ at room temperature. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was filtered and the s lid was washed with portions of H_2O , and then recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.335 g (78%, as M MeOH) of

95 as white crystalline needles. MP 140-142°C. MS (EI) m/e 395.9274 (2%, M⁺=395.9279). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.88 (s, 1, 7-H), 8.08 (s, 1, 4-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.49 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2',2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.40 (t, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=4.0 Hz), 5.28 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.42 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.13 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=1.5 Hz), 4.01 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5''}=2.5 Hz), 3.70 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, J_{5',5''}=12.0 Hz). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁BrCl₂N₂O₄ MeOH: C, 36.30; H, 3.51; N, 6.51. Found: C, 35.98; H, 3.60; N, 6.39.

6-Bromo-2,5-dichloro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (99)

To a suspension of 0.110 g (0.313 mmol, as C₁₂H₁₁Cl₂N₂O₄ MeOH) of 2,5-dichloro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole (73) in 3 mL of H₂O was added dropwise 10 mL of a sat. solution of Br₂/H₂O at room temperature. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued for 6 hr. The reaction mixture was filtered and the solid was washed with portions of H₂O, and then recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.091 g (73%, 2 crops) of 99 as white crystalline needles. MP 158-159°C. MS (EI) m/e 395.9274 (5% M⁺=395.9279).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.69 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.96 (s, 1, 4-H), 5.88 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2',2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.41 (t, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.30 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.42 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.5 Hz), 5.30 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',4'}=1.5 Hz), 4.01 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5''}=2.5 Hz), 3.71 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, J_{5',5''}=1.20 Hz). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₁BrCl₂N₂O₄: C, 36.21; H, 2.79; N, 7.04. Found: C, 36.14; H, 2.90; N, 6.90.

4,5-Difluoro-1,2-phenylenediamine (10)

To a solution of 5.55 g (31.876 mmole) of 4,5-difluoro-2-nitroaniline in 50 mL of MeOH, were added 100 mL of 2 N HCl and 8.90 g (159.380 mmole) of iron powder. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr and then filtered. The filtrate was neutralized with conc. NH₄OH to ~ pH 8. The resulting suspension was filtered again and the filter cake was washed thoroughly with MeOH. The filtrate and washings were combined, concentrated to ~ 100 mL, and extracted with CHCl₃ (100 mL x 3). The CHCl₃ solution was washed with a sat. NaCl solution (100 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was coevaporated with CHCl₃ to give 3.515 g (77%) of 10. This material was used in the next reaction without further purification. A brown crystalline sample of 10 was obtained by recrystallization from CCl₄. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 6.44 (t, 2, 3-H and 6-H, J_{F,H}=10.5 Hz), 4.59 (br. s, 4, 2 x NH₂).

2-Amino-5,6-difluorobenzimidazole (11)

To a stirred solution of 4.9 mL of 5 M BrCN/MeCN in 50 mL of H₂O, was added dropwise a solution of 3.515 g (24.389 mm le) of 10 in 50 mL of MeOH over 20 min. After

the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to ~ 50 mL and was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL x 3). The combined EtOAc solution was back washed with 100 mL of H₂O and then discarded. The combined H₂O phase was basified with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (precipitation occurred) and was extracted again with EtOAc (70 mL x 3). The EtOAc solution was dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to dryness. The residue was suspended in 50 mL of CHCl₃ and filtered. The yellowish solid was washed with portions of CHCl₃ to give 3.40 g of 11. The filtrate and washings were evaporated to dryness and the procedure was repeated to give an additional 0.355 g of 11. The total yield of 11 was 3.755 g (91%). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.79 (br. s, 1, 1-NH), 7.06 (dd, 2, 4-H and 7-H, ³J_{F,H}=11.0 Hz, ⁴J_{F,H}=7.5 Hz), 6.30 (br. s, 2, 2-NH₂).

2-Chloro-5,6-difluorobenzimidazole (12)

To a stirred mixture of 40 mL of aqueous CuCl₂ solution (60% by weight) and 20 mL of H₂O was added a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (2.08 g/10 mL). Compound 11 (1.69 g, 15 mmole) was then added portionwise over 5 min. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr. An additional 30 ml of the aqueous CuCl₂ solution (60% by weight) was added and the reaction mixture was heated on a steam bath for 10 min (a small amount of MeOH was added to suppress the formation of foam). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (150 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaCl solution (100 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (3 x 15 cm) using 2% and 3% MeOH/CHCl₃ as eluants. Evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave a brownish solid. This solid was washed with Et₂O and dried to give 0.962 g of 12. The Et₂O washings were evaporated and the residue was repurified through a silica column (2 x 10 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and washing of the residue with Et₂O gave an additional 0.152 g of 12. The total yield of 12 was 1.114 g (59%). MS m/e 187.9954 (100%, M⁺=187.9953). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.5 (br. s, 1, 1-NH), 7.62 (t, 2, 4-H and 7-H, J_{F,H}=9.0 Hz.

2-Amino-5(6)-chloro-6(5)-fluorobenzimidazole (12b)

30 4-Chloro-5-fluoro-1,2-phenylenediamine (12a, 3.212 g, 20 mmol) was dissolved in 40 mL of MeOH and then added dropwise to a stirred solution of 4.4 mL of 5 M BrCN/MeCN in 40 mL of H₂O over 30 min. After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated to ~ 40 mL and then was washed with EtOAc (100 mL). The EtOAc phase was extracted with H₂O (60 mL). 35 The combined H₂O phase was neutralized with sat. NaHCO₃ solution to ~ pH 8 and the

resulting suspension was extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The EtOAc phase was washed with a mixture of sat. NaHCO₃/sat. NaCl solution (20 mL/180 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was coevaporated with CHCl₃ (20 mL x 2) and then was suspended in 50 mL of CHCl₃. The suspension was filtered to give 3.340 g of 12b as a grey solid. The filtrate was evaporated and coevaporated with CHCl₃. The resulting solid was again suspended in a small amount of CHCl₃ and the suspension was filtered to give an additional 0.235 g of 12b. The total yield of 12b was 3.575 g (96%). This product showed a single spot on TLC. MP: 194-196°C. MS: (El) m/e 185.0156 (100%, M⁺=185.0156). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 10.85, (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.16 (d, 1, 4-H, ⁴J_{F-H}=7.0 Hz), 7.06 (d, 1, 7-H, ³J_{F-H}=10.0 Hz), 6.43 (br s, 2, 2-NH₂). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₅ClFN₃: C, 45.30; H, 2.72; N, 22.64. Found: C, 45.14; H, 2.67; N, 22.44.

2,5(6)-Dichloro-6(5)-fluorobenzimidazole (12c)

Compound 12b (0.928 g, 5.0 mmol) was suspended in a solution of CuCl₂/H₂O (10 g/25 mL). To this suspension, was added dropwise a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (3.45 g, 50 mmol/25 mL) at 70°C over 30 min (5 mL of t-BuOH was added portionwise to suppress foaming). After the addition, stirring was continued at 70°C for 15 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and extracted with EtOAc (75 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was filtered and the filtrate was washed with half sat. NaCl solution (100 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.4 x 25 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 23-35 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.744 g (73%) of 12c as a yellowish solid. MP: 197-198°C. MS: (El) m/e 203.9657 (100%, M⁺=203.9657). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 13.60 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.76 (d, 1, 4-H, ⁴J_{F-H}=7.0 Hz), 7.61 (d, 1, 7-H, ³J_{F-H}=10.5 Hz). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₃Cl₂FN₂: C, 41.01; H, 1.47; N, 13.66. Found: C, 41.00; H, 1.39; N, 13.59.

2,4,5,6-Tetrachlorobenzimidazole (13)

To a mixture of CuCl₂ (1.345 g, 10 mmol) and 0.99 mL of 90% t-BuONO (30 mmol) in 25 mL of acetone, was added portionwise 1.280 g (5 mmol) of 13b over a period of 3 min. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued at 60°C for 2 h (with the addition of 0.99 mL of fresh 90% t-BuONO every 30 min). The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, poured into 50 mL of 2 N HCl, and extracted with 150 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc layer was washed with 2 N HCl (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (100 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (4 x 7 cm, eluted with CHCl₃, 1% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 31-45 (15 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.631 g (2 crops, 49%) of 13 as slightly brownish crystals. MP: 243-244°C. MS: (El) m/e 253.8952 (81%,

- 41 -

$M^+ = 253.8972$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 14.09 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.83 {s, 1, 7(4)-H}. Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₂Cl₄N₂: C 32.85, H 0.78, N 10.95. Found: C, 32.69; H, 0.84; N, 10.76.

2-Amino-4,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (13b)

To a stirred solution of 3.62 mL of 5 M BrCN/MeCN in 35 mL of H₂O, was added 5 dropwise a solution of 3,4,5-trichloro-1,2-phenylenediamine (13a) (3.478 g, 16.446 mmol) in 35 mL of MeOH. After the addition had been completed, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated to ~ 35 mL and was washed with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc phase was extracted with H₂O (50 mL). The combined H₂O phase was neutralized with sat. NaHCO₃ solution to ~ pH 8 and the resulting 10 suspension was extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The EtOAc phase was washed with a mixture of sat. NaHCO₃ and sat. NaCl solution (20 mL/130 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in MeOH, decolorized with charcoal, and then recrystallized from MeCN to give 3.098 g (2 crops, 80%) of 13b as a slightly grey crystals. MP: 255-258°C. MS: (EI) m/e 234.9473 (100%, $M^+ = 234.9471$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 15 11.25 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.29 {s, 1, 7(4)-H}, 6.75 (br s, 2, 2-NH₂). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₄Cl₃N₃: C 35.55, H 1.70, N 17.77, Found: C 35.72, H 1.78, N 17.89.

2-Chloro-5,6-dibromobenzimidazole (17)

To a suspension of 0.763 g (5 mmole) of 2-chlorobenzimidazole in 50 mL of 1:1 MeOH/H₂O, was added dropwise a solution of 1 mL of Br₂ in 10 mL of MeOH over a 20 period of 30 min. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and was then filtered. The solid was washed with portions of H₂O until the washings were neutral. This solid was air dried and recrystallized from MeOH to give 1.115 g (3 crops, 72%) of 17. mp 228°C; 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 13-14 (br. s, 1, 1-NH), 7.93 (s, 2, 4-H, 7-H).

2-Chloro-5-nitrobenzimidazole (19)

25 To 210 mL of fuming HNO₃, 2-chlorobenzimidazole (13.42 g, 87.95 mmole) was added portionwise over a period of 10 min with stirring and ice-H₂O cooling. After the addition, the cooling bath was removed and stirring was continued at room temperature overnight. This reaction mixture was cooled to ~0°C, poured into 300 mL of ice, and neutralized carefully with conc. NH₄OH to ~ pH 8. The resulting suspension was filtered.

30 The yellowish solid product was washed with portions of H₂O and air-dried. The filtrate and washings were combined and extracted with EtOAc (200 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaCl solution (200 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated to give 1.3 g of a yellowish solid. The solid was combined with the major part of the product and was recrystallized from MeOH to give 16.34 g (5 crops, 94%) of 19 as yellowish crystals.

35 mp 235-237°C. MS (EI) m/e 196.9984 (100%, $M^+ = 196.9992$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 14.06

- 42 -

(br. s, 1, 1-NH), 8.41 (s, 1, 4-H), 8.14 (dd, 1, 6-H, $J_{6,4}=2.0$ Hz, $J_{6,7}=9.0$ Hz), 7.71 (d, 1, 7-H).

2-Chloro-4,5,6-tribromobenzimidazole (20)

To a suspension of 4.578 g (30 mmol) of 2-chlorobenzimidazole (16) in a mixture 5 of MeOH/t-BuOH/H₂O (20 mL/25 mL/100 mL), was added dropwise a solution of Br₂/MeOH (7.728 mL/20 mL) over 2 h. After the addition had been completed, the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. More solvents (MeOH/H₂O, 25 mL/100 mL) were added, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 days. Fresh Br₂/MeOH 10 (1.546 mL/10 mL) was added, stirring was continued at room temperature for 1 day and then at 50°C for 6 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled and filtered. The filter cake was washed with portions of H₂O, air-dried, and fractionally recrystallized from MeOH to give 1.70 g (15%) of 20 as crystalline needles (mainly one spot on TLC). {the major fraction (6.154 g) was a mixture of compounds 17, 20, and 2-chloro-4,5,6,7-tetrabromobenzimidazole (23}. MP: 263-266°C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 14.00 (br s, 1, 15 1-NH), 7.96 {s, 1, 7(4)-H}.

5(6)-Amino-2-chloro-6(5)-nitrobenzimidazole (25)

A mixture of 1.213 g (5.0 mmol) of 2-chloro-5,6-dinitrobenzimidazole (22) and 1.398 g (25 mmol) of iron powder in 50 mL of AcOH was stirred at room temperature for 4 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL of EtOAc, filtered, and the solid was washed 20 with portions of EtOAc (total EtOAc used ~ 100 mL). The filtrate and washings were combined and washed with H₂O (100 mL x 3). The H₂O layer was extracted with 100 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solutions were combined, evaporated, coevaporated with toluene (10 mL x 3), MeOH (10 mL x 2) to give a brown solid.

The brown solid was absorbed on 30 mL of silica gel and was chromatographed 25 on a silica column (3 x 25 cm, eluted successively with 2%, 4%, 8% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 30-58 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.431 g (2 crops, 41%) of 25 as red crystals. MP: >250°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 212.0096 (100%, M⁺=212.0101). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.07 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 8.15 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.06 (s, 2, 5-NH₂), 6.91 (s, 1, 4-H). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₅ClN₄O₂: C, 39.55; H, 2.37; N, 26.35. 30 Found: C, 39.81; H, 2.11; N, 26.43.

2-Chloro-5(6)-iodo-6(5)-nitrobenzimidazole (26) from 2-chloro-5,6-dinitrobenzimidazole (22)

A mixture of 1.213 g (5.0 mmol) of 22 and 1.398 g (25 mmol) of iron powder in 50 mL of AcOH was stirred at room temperature for 4 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL of EtOAc, filtered, and the filtrate was washed with portions of EtOAc (total 35 EtOAc used ~ 100 mL). The filtrate and washings were combined and washed with H₂O

- 43 -

(50 mL x 3). The H₂O layer was extracted with 100 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solutions were combined, evaporated, coevaporated with toluene (10 mL x 3), MeOH (10 mL x 2) to give a brown solid.

The brown solid was dissolved in a mixture of Conc. H₂SO₄/ice-H₂O (14 mL/20 mL) at 0°C. To this mixture, was added dropwise a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (0.994 g, 13.688 mmol/5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hr. A solution of urea/H₂O (0.411 g/3 mL) was added and stirring was continued at 0°C for 10 min. A solution of KI/H₂O (2.272 g/5 mL) was added and stirring was continued at room temperature for 18 h. The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (100 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (100 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ (100 mL), sat. NaCl solution (100 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.2 x 25 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2% MeOH/CHCl₃). Fractions 20-41 (20 mL per fraction) were collected, washed with Na₂S₂O₃/H₂O (1 g/100 mL), dried(Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to gave 0.593 g (3 crops, 40%) of 26 as yellowish crystals. MP: ~ 213°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 322.8963 (100%, M⁺=322.8959). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.98 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 8.24, 8.16 (2 x s, 2, 4-H and 7-H). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₃ClIN₃O₂: C, 25.99; H, 0.93; N, 12.99. Found: C, 25.74; H, 0.73; N, 12.71.

6(5)-Amino-2-chloro-5(6)-iodobenzimidazole (26a)

A mixture of 0.339 g (1.048 mmol) of 26 and 0.090 g (wet) of Ra-Ni in 10 mL of EtOH was hydrogenated at room temperature, 50 psi of H₂ for 7 h. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2 x 6 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2%, 3% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 11-17 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.190 g (62%) of 26a as a foam. An analytical sample (a yellowish crystalline compound) was obtained by recrystallization from MeOH. MP: >200°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 292.9202 (100%, M⁺=292.9217). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 12.80 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.75 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.87 (s, 1, 7-H), 5.03 (s, 2, 6-NH₂). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₅ClIN₃: C, 28.65; H, 1.72; N, 14.32. Found: C, 28.84; H, 1.66; N, 14.17.

2,4,6-Trichlorobenzimidazole (32)

To a solution of CuCl₂/H₂O (45 g/100 mL), were added a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (4.14 g, 60 mmol/20 mL) and then a solution of 29/MeOH (4.04 g, 20 mmol/20 mL). After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 1 hr. The reaction mixture was then heated on a steam bath for 1 hr. During this period of heating, an additional fresh NaNO₂/H₂O solution (4.14 g, 60 mmol/20 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was cooled and extracted with EtOAc (200 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was filtered and

- 44 -

- th filtrate was washed with half sat. NaCl solution (200 mL x 2), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated. Th residue was chromatographed on a silica column (4 x 25 cm, eluted with 2% MeOH/ CHCl_3). Evaporation of fractions 46-68 (20 mL per fraction) gave 1.796 g (41%) of 8 as a white foam. An analytical sample was obtained by recrystallization from MeOH.
- 5 MP: 233-234°C. MS: (EI) m/e 219.9357 (100%, $M^+ = 219.9362$). ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): d 13.92 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.58 ("s", 1, 5-H or 7-H), 7.44 ("d", 1, 5-H or 7-H, $J_{5,7} = 1.5$ Hz). Anal. calcd. for $\text{C}_7\text{H}_3\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_2$: C 37.96, H 1.37, N 12.65. Found: C 38.13, H 1.68, N 12.67.
- 2-Amino-5(6)-chlorobenzimidazole (34)
- To a solution of 5 M BrCN/ CH_3CN (10 ml) in 100 ml of H_2O) was added dropwise 10 a solution of 7.13 grams (50 mmoles) of 4-chloro-*o*-phenylenediamine in methanol (100 ml) over a period of 30 minutes while stirring. The contents were reacted at room temperature for an additional two hours. The reaction solution was concentrated to approximately 100 ml and extracted with EtOAc (200 ml/100 ml H_2O). The organic phase was extracted a second time with an additional 100 ml of distilled water and then discarded. The 15 combined water phases were neutralized with 40 ml of saturated sodium bicarbonate. The resultant precipitate was collected by filtration. The filter cake was washed with portions of H_2O (100 ml) and air dried. The filtrate and washings were combined and extracted with EtOAc (100 ml x 2). The EtOAc solution was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to give a solid. This was combined with the major part of the solid product and was coevaporated 20 with EtOH (2x). The resulting solid was suspended in 100 ml of CHCl_3 and the suspension was filtered. The filter cake was washed with portions of CHCl_3 , and air dried to give 6.62 grams of 34 as a yellowish solid. The filtrate and washings were evaporated and the residue was again suspended in a small amount of CHCl_3 . Filtration of the suspension gave an additional 0.88 grams of 34 as a yellowish solid. This material was used for 25 subsequent reactions without further purification. The total yield of 34 was 7.50 grams (90%). mp 159-161°C. MS (EI) m/e 167.0243 (100%, $M^+ = 167.0250$). ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) d 10.81 (br. s, 1, 1-NH), 7.09 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4,6} = 2.0$ Hz), 7.06 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,6} = 8.5$ Hz), 6.84 ("d", 1, 6-H), 6.33 br. s, 2, 2-NH₂).
- 2,5(6)-Dichlorobenzimidazole (35)
- 30 2-Amino-5(6)-chlorobenzimidazole (34) (10.06 grams, 60 mmoles) was added portionwise to an aqueous solution of cupric chloride (120 grams) and sodium nitrite (12.42 grams) while stirring. The reaction mixture was stirred for one hour at room temperature. At this time the reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (200 ml x 3) to provide a brownish discoloration of the organic phase. The EtOAc phase was washed 35 with saturated NaCl solution, dried with Na_2SO_4 , and evaporated *in vacuo* to reveal a

brown precipitate which was added to a silica column. Elution with 2% MeOH/CHCl₃, while increasing the polarity gradually to 5% MeOH/CHCl₃, and evaporation of the appropriate fractions provided a brownish-white precipitate which was suspended in Et₂O and filtered to yield 53.1% (grams) of 35. mp 209-212°C. MS (EI) m/e 185.9751 (100%, 5 M⁺=185.9752). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 13.5 (br. s, 1, 1-NH), 7.59 (d, 1, 4-H, J₄₋₆=2.0 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1, 7-H, J₇₋₆=8.5 Hz), 7.25 (m, 1, 6-H).

2-Chloro-5,6-diiodobenzimidazole (41)

Compound 26a (0.190 g, 0.647 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of conc. H₂SO₄/ice-H₂O (2 mL/3 mL) at 0°C. To this mixture, was added dropwise a solution of 10 NaNO₂/H₂O (0.134 g, 1.942 mmol/5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr. A solution of KI/H₂O (0.537 g/5 mL) was added dropwise and stirring was continued at room temperature for 3 h and then 100°C for 15 min. The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was washed with Na₂S₂O₃/H₂O (1 g/50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried 15 (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.169 g of 41 as a yellowish crystalline compound. The mother liquor was evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2 x 4 cm, eluted successively with 1%, 2% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 4-6 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave additional 0.040 g of 41. The total yield of 41 was 0.209 g (80%). MP: 20 228-229°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 403.8064 (100%, M⁺=403.8074). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.50 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 8.11 (s, 2, 4-H and 7-H). Anal. Calcd. for C₇H₃ClI₂N₂: C, 20.79; H, 0.75; N, 6.93. Found: C, 20.73; H, 0.83; N, 6.74.

2-Amino-4(7)-chloro-6(5)-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (41b)

To a stirred solution of 4.8 mL of 5 M BrCN/MeCN in 40 mL of H₂O, was added 25 dropwise a solution of 3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-1,2-phenylenediamine (41a) (4.212 g, 20 mmol) in 40 mL of MeOH at room temperature over 30 min. After the addition had finished, stirring was continued at room temperature for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated to ~ 40 mL and then was washed with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc phase was extracted with H₂O (50 mL). The combined H₂O phase was neutralized with sat. 30 NaHCO₃ solution to ~ pH 8 and the resulting suspension was extracted with EtOAc (100 mL x 2). The EtOAc phase was washed with sat. NaCl solution (150 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated to give 3.913 g (83%) of 41b as a white foam. This product showed a single spot on TLC. An analytical sample was obtained by addition of CHCl₃ to the above foam to effect crystallization. MP: 180-182°C. MS: (EI) m/e 235.0121 (100%, 35 M⁺=235.0124). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 11.77, 11.25 (2 x br s*, 1, 1-NH), 7.35, 7.26 (2 x

s, 2, Ph), 6.90, 6.53 (2 x br s*, 2, 2-NH₂). Anal. Calcd. for C₈H₅ClF₃N₃: C, 40.79; H, 2.14; N, 17.84. Found: C, 40.90; H, 2.34; N, 17.79.

*It indicated the existence of two tautomers.

2,4(7)-Dichloro-6(5)-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (41c)

5 To a solution of CuCl₂/H₂O (20 g/50 mL), was added a solution of NaNO₂/H₂O (3.45 g, 50 mmol/20 mL). Compound 41b (2.356 g, 10 mmol) was then added portionwise over 10 min (2 mL of t-BuOH was added to help the mix). After the addition had finished, stirring was continued at room temperature for 1 h. The reaction mixture was then heated at 70°C for 30 min. During this period of heating, an additional fresh NaNO₂/H₂O solution (3.45 g, 50 mmol/20 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was cooled and extracted with EtOAc (75 mL x 2). The EtOAc solution was filtered and the filtrate was washed with sat. NaCl solution (100 mL x 2), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (3 x 25 cm, eluted with CHCl₃, 1% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 35-42 (20 mL per fraction) gave 1.369 g (54%) of 15 41c as a yellowish solid. An analytical sample was obtained by recrystallization from MeOH. MP: 187-189°C. MS: (EI) m/e 253.9629 (100%, M⁺=253.9625). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 14.22 (br s, 1, 1-NH), 7.86, 7.68 (2 x s, 2, Ph). Anal. Calcd. for C₈H₃Cl₂F₃N₂: C, 37.68; H, 1.19; N, 10.98. Found: C, 37.81; H, 1.08; N, 11.06.

1-(5-O-Acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (42a)

20 A mixture of 42 (0.48 g, 1.0 mmol) and KOAc (0.49 g, 5.0 mmol) in MeOH/H₂O (20 mL/2 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 24 h. AcOH (0.286 mL, 5.0 mmol) was added and stirring was continued at room temperature for 15 min. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was partitioned between H₂O/CHCl₃ (50 mL/50 mL). The CHCl₃ layer was washed with sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. 25 The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 20 cm, eluted with CHCl₃, 1%, 2%, 4% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 42-51 (15 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.178 g (2 crops, 45%) of 42a as white crystals. MP: 82-87°C. MS: (EI) m/e 393.9875 (20%, M⁺=393.9890). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.00, 7.96 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 5.91 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.5 Hz), 5.59 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2,2'OH}=6.0 Hz), 30 5.45 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3,3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.44 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5,4'}=4.5 Hz, J_{5,5'}=12.5 Hz), 4.42 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=6.0 Hz), 4.25 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{5,4'}=2.5 Hz), 4.17 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{3,4'}=3.5 Hz), 4.11 (m, 1, 3'-H), 2.14 (s, 3, 5'-OAc). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 169.95 (COCH₃), 142.03 (C2), 140.92 (C3a), 132.30 (C7a), 125.96, 125.86 (C5 and C6), 120.28 (C4), 113.47 (C7), 89.32 (C1'), 82.63 (C4'), 71.41 (C2'), 69.03 (C3'), 63.35 (C5'). 20.56 (COCH₃). Anal. Calcd. for 35 C₁₄H₁₃Cl₃N₂O₅: C, 42.50; H, 3.31; N, 7.08. Found: C, 42.45; H, 3.20; N, 6.97.

2-Amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl) benzimidazole | (43)

2-Amino-5,6-dichloro benzimidazole (4) (3 g, 16 mmole) was dissolved in dry acetonitrile (150 ml) and stirred in an inert atmosphere at 60°C. BSA (4.37 ml, 17 mm le) was added and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes.

5 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranose (5.09 g, 16 mmole) and TMSTI (3.29 ml, 17 mmole) were added to the clear solution and the mixture was allowed to stir at 60°C for 1 hr. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and separated on a silica column to yield 1.14 g (15%) of 2-amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl) benzimidazole (43). 13 C NMR (CDCl₃): δ 170.04 ppm, 169.56, 169.11, 154.57, 141.64, 10 132.53, 125.90, 1123.45, 117.72, 109.49, 85.78, 80.99, 70.95, 69.83, 62.91, 20.74, 20.54, 20.20. 1 H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.96 ppm (s, 3H), 1.09 (s, 3H), 1.13 (s, 3H), 3.75 (m, 2H), 4.08 (dd, 1H), 5.00 (dd, 1H), 5.13 (t, 1H), 5.42 (s, 2H), 5.61 (d, 1H), 7.27 (s, 1H), 7.42 (s, 1H). MS (FAB): m/e 758, 718, 676, 460, 426, 259, 217, 139.

2-Amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (44)

15 2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (42, 0.48 g; 1 mmole) was dissolved in dry MeOH (10 ml). Liq. NH₃(10 ml) was added and the mixture heated in a steel bomb at 100°C for 2 hr. This mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hr. Excess NH₃ was allowed to evaporate and the solution evaporated to dryness, absorbed onto silica gel (2 g), and chromatographed on a silica gel column using silica gel (20 g; 60-200 mesh). Elution of the column with CH₂Cl₂:CH₃OH (96:4) gave the desired compound 44 as the major nucleoside. Evaporation of the solvent and crystallization of the residue from EtOH gave 44 (0.02 g; yield 6.06%). mp. 145°C; UV λ_{max} (MeOH): 259 (7941) and 301 (8348) nm; λ_{max} (pH1): 215 (26000) and 292 (7520) nm; λ_{max} (pH11): 257 (7967) and 298 (7107) nm. 1 H NMR(DMSO- d₆): δ 8.70 (s,1H, C₇-H, 20 8.28(s,1H, C₄-H), 7.90 (bs,2H, D₂O exchangeable, NH₂), 6.75(d,C1'H, J_{1,2}= 4.5 H₂) and the rest of the sugar protons.

25

1-(5-O-Acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-2-bromo-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (52b)

A mixture of 52a (1.048 g, 2.0 mmol) and KOAc (0.98 g, 10.0 mmol) in MeOH/H₂O (40 mL/4 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 24 hr. AcOH (0.572 mL, 10.0 mmol) was 30 added and stirring was continued at room temperature for 15 min. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc/H₂O (75 mL/75 mL). The EtOAc layer was washed with sat. NaCl solution (75 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 24 cm, eluted with CHCl₃, 2%, 3%, 4% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 15-27 (15 mL per fraction) and 35 recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.50 g (2 crops, 57%) of 52b as white crystals. MP:

85-95°C (melted slowly over a large range) MS: (EI) m/ 437.9398 (15%, M⁺=437.9385).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.00, 7.95 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 5.90 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.5 Hz), 5.58 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2,2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.46 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3,3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.44 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5,4'}=4.5 Hz, J_{5,5'}=12.5 Hz), 4.43 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=6.0 Hz), 4.24 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5,4'}=2.0

5 Hz), 4.16 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{3,4'}=3.0 Hz), 4.11 (m, 1, 3'-H), 2.15 (s, 3, 5'-OAc). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 169.96 (COCH₃), 142.57 (C3a), 132.49, 132.42 (C2 and C7a), 125.78, 125.74 (C5 and C6), 120.14 (C4), 113.28 (C7), 90.32 (C1'), 82.56 (C4'), 71.27 (C2'), 68.99 (C3'), 63.34 (C5'), 20.58 (COCH₃). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₄H₁₃BrCl₂N₂O₅: C, 38.21; H, 2.98; N, 6.37. Found: C, 38.37; H, 2.86; N, 6.27.

10 5,6-Dichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazol-2-thione (53)

A mixture of dry 5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole-2-thione (3, 2.19g 10 mmole), hexamethyldisilazane (4ml) and (NH₄)₂SO₄ (0.1g) was heated at reflux temperature with stirring for 15 hr under anhydrous conditions. The clear brown reaction mixture was fractionated to remove unreacted HMDS under reduced pressure (water aspirator) to afford
15 the disilylated compound. The silylated compound was mixed with 1-bromo-2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-D-ribofuranose (from 3.5 g (11 mmole) of tetraacetylsugar) and sodium iodide (0.05 g). The mixture was then fused at 110°C (oil bath temperature) with stirring for 45 minutes under reduced pressure. The reaction mixture which had been cooled to room temperature was dissolved in CHCl₃. The CHCl₃ solution was washed with
20 a cold saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (100 ml x 4) and then cold water (100 ml x 4). The CHCl₃ phase was dried over Na₂SO₄ and evaporated on a water bath (40°C) to dryness to yield a syrup [5,6-dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl) benzimidazole-2-thione]. The syrup was dissolved in methanolic ammonia (methanol saturated with ammonia at 0°C, 100 ml) and allowed to stand at room temperature for 24
25 hours. After the methanolic ammonia had been removed at room temperature, a syrup remained which was triturated with cold water (30 ml). The solid material (2.548 g) which separated was collected by filtration and was applied to a flash column chromatography on silica gel with CH₂Cl₂/MeOH (15:1) as eluant. Fractions were collected (25 ml each), and fractions containing the desired compound were combined and evaporated to obtain
30 53 which was crystallized from aq. EtOH. Overall yield 2.0 g, 57.0%, mp 241°C.

2-Benzylthio-5,6-dichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (54)

Compound 53 (0.5 g) was dissolved in cold water (10 ml) containing concentrated ammonium hydroxide (2.5 ml). Benzyl chloride (0.5 ml) was added to this solution with stirring and the stirring continued at room temperature for 5 hours. The white solid (0.41
35 g) which had separated from solution was collected by filtration, washed with cold water.

The solid was extracted with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and the ethyl acetate phase was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and then evaporated by aspirator to give a syrup. The syrup was subjected to a flash column of silica gel with $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2\text{-MeOH}$ (15:1) as eluant. Fractions were collected (25 ml each) and fractions containing the desired compound were 5 combined and evaporated to afford 54 which was crystallized from $\text{CH}_2\text{C}_1\text{I}_2\text{-MeOH}$ (15:1), mp. 149°C, Yield 0.223 g (35.5%).

2-Chloro-5,6-dibromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (56) and
2-Chloro-5,6-dibromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- α -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole

A suspension of 931 mg (3 mmole) of 2-chloro-5,6-dibromobenzimidazole (17) in 10 15 ml of dry CH_3CN was treated with 0.8 mL (3 mmole) of N,O -bis(trimethylsilyl) trifluoroacetamide (BSTFA) at 75°C for 10 min to give a clear solution. To this solution, was added 955 mg (3 mmole) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranose and 0.64 mL (3.3 mmole) of trimethylsilyl triflate (TMSTf). Stirring was continued at 75°C for 1 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and then diluted with 100 mL of EtOAc. 15 The EtOAc solution was washed with a sat. NaHCO_3 solution (100 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (100 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (3 x 20 cm, eluted with CHCl_3). Evaporation of fractions 4-10 and recrystallization of the residue from MeOH gave 946 mg (56%) of 56 as white crystals. mp 140-142°C; MS m/e 565.9082 (0.9%, $M^+ = 565.9091$); ^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6) δ 8.20 (s, 1, 7-H), 20 8.11 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H), 5.55 (t, 1, 2'-H), 5.43 (dd, 1, 3'-H), 4.47 (m, 2, 5'-H, 4'-H), 4.37 (m, 1, 5"-H), 2.15, 2.14, 2.02 (3 X s, 3 X, 3.3 X Ac). Evaporation of fractions 13-15 gave 392 mg (23%) of the α anomer as a white foam. ^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6) δ 8.07, 8.06 (2 X s, 2, 4-H, 7-H), 6.70 (d, 1, 1'-H), 5.71 (t, 1, 2'-H), 5.50 (dd, 1, 3'-H), 4.81 (m, 1, 4'-H), 4.36 (dd, 1, 5'-H), 4.27 (dd, 1, 5"-H).

25 2-chloro-5,6-dibromo-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (57)

Method A (57)

A solution of 569 mg (1 mmole) of (56) in 20 mL of $\text{NH}_3\text{/MeOH}$ was stirred in a sealed flask at room temperature for 5 hr. Volatile materials were removed by evaporation. The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 337 mg (2 crops, 76%) of 57. Its ^1H NMR spectrum was identical to that of (57) prepared by a direct bromination; see Method B.

Method B (57)

To a suspension of 570 mg (2 mmole) of 2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)-benzimidazole in 50 mL of H_2O , was added dropwise 50 mL of $\text{Br}_2\text{/H}_2\text{O}$ over a period of 35 30 min. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for an additional 3 hr.

- (Though the reaction mixture remained as a suspension, the shape of the crystals changed and TLC indicated a clean reaction). The reaction mixture was allowed to stand in an ice bath for 30 min. and then filtered. The solid was washed with portions of H₂O until the washings were neutral. This solid was air dried and recrystallized from MeOH to give 757 mg of product (57) (80%) as white crystalline needles. MP 126-129°C; MS (FAB) m/e 440.8862 (3%, M⁺=440.8852); ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 8.68 (s, 1, 7-H) 8.09 (s, 1, 4-H), 5.88 (d, 1, 1'-H), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH), 5.40 (t, 1, 5'-OH), 5.30 (d,l, 3'-OH), 4.42 (m, 1, 2'-H), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H), 4.01 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.70 m, 2, 5'-H).
- 2-Chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (64) and 2-Chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-α-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole
- To a suspension of 0.943 g (5 mmole) of 12 in 25 mL of ClCH₂CH₂Cl, was added 1.25 mL (5 mmole) of BSA at 75°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 30 min. To this solution, was added 1.75 g (5.5 mmole) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose and 1.07 mL (5.5 mmole) of TMSOTf. Stirring was continued at 75°C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, diluted with 100 mL of CHCl₃, and extracted with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL x 2) and sat. NaCl solution (100 mL). The CHCl₃ phase was dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (3 x 25 cm, eluted successively with 0.5%, 1% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and recrystallization of the residue from MeOH gave 1.257 g (3 crops, 56%) of 64 as crystalline needles. MP 90-91°C; MS m/e 446.0694 (5%, M⁺=446.0692); ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 7.93 (dd, 1, 7-H, ³J_{F,H}=10.5 Hz, ⁴J_{F,H}=7.5 Hz), 7.82 (dd, 1, 4-H, ³J_{F,H}=10.5 Hz, ⁴J_{F,H}=7.5 Hz), 6.23 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.55 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.44 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.45 (m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.13, 2.10, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 169.95, 169.50, 169.18 (3 x OCOC₂H₅), 148.76, 148.62, 146.10, 145.93 (C5 and C6, ¹J_{F,C}=242 Hz), 140.16 (C2), 137.01 (C3a, ³J_{F,C}=12 Hz), 128.54 (C7a, ³J_{F,C}=12 Hz), 107.31, 107.09 (C4, J_{F,C}=20 Hz), 100.93, 100.66 (C7, J_{F,C}=24 Hz), 86.89 (Cl'), 79.41 (C4'), 70.40 (C2'), 68.62 (C3'), 62.67 (C5'), 20.43, 20.28, 20.00 (3 x OCOC₂H₅).
- Further elution and evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave 0.456 g (20%) of the α anomer as a syrup. MS m/e 446.0680 (12%, M⁺=446.0692); ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.75 (m, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 6.69 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=4.0 Hz), 5.69 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.0 Hz), 5.49 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=7.0 Hz), 4.90 (m, 1, 4'-H), 4.37 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5',4'}=3.5 Hz; J_{5',5'}=12.0 Hz), 4.26 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5',4'}=5.5 Hz), 2.09, 2.03, 1.54 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 170.05, 169.27, 168.34 (3 x OCOC₂H₅), 148.54, 148.37, 148.19, 145.88, 145.71, 145.54 (C5 and C6, ¹J_{F,C}=241 Hz, ²J_{F,C}=16 Hz), 139.68 (C2), 136.71, 136.58

(C3a, $^3J_{F-C}=11$ Hz), 129.45, 129.32 (C7a, $^3J_{F-C}=12$ Hz), 106.66, 106.44 (C4, $^2J_{F-C}=20$ Hz), 101.79, 101.52 (C7, $^2J_{F-C}=24$ Hz), 86.43 (C1'), 78.16 (C4'), 70.97 (C2'), 70.39 (C3'), 62.69 (C5'), 20.49, 20.09, 19.48 (3 x OCOCH₃).

2-Chloro-5,6-difluoro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (65)

5 Compound 64 (0.894 g, 2 mmole) was treated with 20 mL of NH₃/MeOH in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH to give a solid. This was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.573 g (3 crops, 89%) of 65 as a crystalline compound. MP ~215°C (dec.); MS m/e 320.0385 (20%, M⁺=320.0375); ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.34 (dd, 1, 7-H, $^3J_{F-H}=11.5$ Hz, $^4J_{F-H}=7.5$ Hz), 7.77 (dd, 1, 4-H, $^3J_{F-H}=11.0$ Hz, $J_{F-H}=7.5$ Hz), 5.88 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1'-2'}=8.0$ Hz), 5.50 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2'-2'OH}=6.5$ Hz), 5.45 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5'-5'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 5.30 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3'-3'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 4.40 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2'-3'}=5.5$ Hz), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3'-4'}=1.5$ Hz), 4.01 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.72 (m, 2, 5'-H, $J_{5'-4'}=2.5$ Hz, $J_{5'-5'}=12.0$ Hz); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 148.53, 148.42, 148.37, 148.26, 145.88, 145.76, 145.72, 145.60 (C5 and C6, $^1J_{F-C}=241$ Hz, $^2J_{F-C}=16$ Hz), 140.84 (C2), 137.16, 137.04 (C3a, $^3J_{F-C}=11$ Hz), 128.55, 128.42 (C7a, $^3J_{F-C}=12$ Hz), 106.77, 106.54 (C4, $^2J_{F-C}=20$ Hz), 102.12, 101.84 (C7, $^2J_{F-C}=25$ Hz), 89.10 (C1'), 86.39 (C4'), 71.55 (C2'), 69.81 (C3'), 6.12 (C5').

2,5-Dichloro-6-fluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (2,5- β -anomer)

82,6-Dichloro-5-fluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole(2,6- β -anomer)

20 and 2,5-Dichloro-6-fluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- α -D-ribofuranosyl) benzimidazole (2,5- α -anomer) & 2,6-Dichloro-5-fluoro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- α -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (2,6- α -anomer)

To a suspension of 0.410 g (2.0 mmol) of 12c in 10 mL of MeCN, was added 0.5 mL (2.0 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 10 min to give a clear solution. This solution was treated with 0.70 g (2.2 mmol) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranose and 0.464 mL (2.4 mmol) of TMSOTf at 75°C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2.4 x 20 cm, eluted with CHCl₃ and 30 0.5% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 21-32 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.438 g (47%) of the β -anomers (2,5- β -anomer and 2,6- β -anomer) as white crystals. MP: 117-119°C. MS: (EI) m/e 462.0414 (7%, M⁺=462.0397). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.03 [d, 0.4, 7-H (2,6- β -anomer), $^4J_{F-H}=6.5$ Hz], 7.96 [d, 0.6, 4-H (2,5- β -anomer), $^4J_{F-H}=7.0$ Hz], 7.92 [d, 0.6, 7-H (2,5- β -anomer), $^3J_{F-H}=9.5$ Hz], 7.80 [d, 0.4, 4-H (2,6- β -anomer), $^3J_{F-H}=9.5$ Hz], 6.25 [d, 0.4, 1'-H (2,6- β -anomer),

$J_{1',2'}=7.0$ Hz], 6.24 [d, 0.6, 1'-H (2,5- β -anomer), $J_{1',2'}=7.0$ Hz], 5.55 [t, 0.4, 2'-H (2,6- β -anomer), $J_{2',3'}=7.0$ Hz], 5.54 [t, 0.6, 2'-H (2,5- β -anomer), $J_{2',3'}=7.0$ Hz], 5.45 [m, 1, 3'-H (2,5- β -anomer + 2,6- β -anomer)], 4.45 [m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H (2,5- β -anomer + 2,6- β -anomer)], 2.14, 2.11, 2.02 [3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac (2,5- β -anomer + 2,6- β -anomer)]. Anal.

5 Calcd. for $C_{18}H_{17}Cl_2FN_2O_7$: C 46.67, H 3.70, N 6.05. Found: C 46.76, H 3.66, N 5.97.

Evaporation of fractions 35-36 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.153 g (17%) of the α - anomers (2,5- α -anomer and 2,6- α -anomer) as a foam. MS: (EI) m/e 462.0399 (9%, $M^+=462.0397$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.88, 7.37 [2 x two overlapping d, 2, 4-H and 7-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer), $^3J_{F,H}=9.5$ Hz, $^4J_{F,H}=7.0$ Hz], 6.70 [2 x d, 1, 1'-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer), $J_{1',2'}=4.0$ Hz], 5.70 [m, 1, 2'-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)], 5.50 [m, 1, 3'-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)], 4.88 [m, 1, 4'-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)], 4.37 [m, 1, 5'-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)], 4.27 [m, 1, 5"-H (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)], 2.090, 2.086, 2.043, 2.028, 1.548, 1.544 [6 x s, 9, 3 x Ac (2,5- α -anomer + 2,6- α -anomer)].

10

15 2,5-Dichloro-6-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole 65a (2,5) & 2,6-Dichloro-5-fluoro-1- β -D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole 65a (2,6)

A solution of 0.323 g (0.50 mmol) of the β - anomers (2,5 + 2,6) in 10 mL of NH₂/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 h. Volatile materials were removed by evaporation and coevaporation with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 20 40°C). The resulting solid was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.141 g (2 crops, 84%) of white crystals (65a (2,5 + 2,6)). MP: 170-172°C. MS: (EI) m/e 336.0082 (14%, $M^+=336.0080$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.49 [d, 0.4, 7-H (65a-2,6), $^4J_{F,H}=7.0$ Hz], 8.31 [d, 0.6, 7-H (65a-2,5), $^3J_{F,H}=10.0$ Hz], 7.91 [d, 0.6, 4-H (65a-2,5), $^4J_{F,H}=7.0$ Hz], 7.74 [d, 0.4, 4-H (65a-2,6), $^3J_{F,H}=9.5$ Hz], 5.89 [d, 1, 1'-H (65a (2,5 + 2,6)), $J_{1',2'}=7.0$ Hz], 5.50 [d, 1, 2'-OH (65a (2,5 + 2,6)), $J_{2',2'OH}=6.5$ Hz], 5.43 [2 x overlapping t, 1, 5'-OH (65a (2,5 + 2,6)), $J_{5',5'OH}=4.5$ Hz], 5.29 [d, 1, 3'-OH (65a (2,5 + 2,6)), $J_{3',3'OH}=4.5$ Hz], 4.41 [m, 1, 2'-H (65a (2,5 + 2,6))], 4.14 [m, 1, 3'-H (65a (2,5 + 2,6))], 4.02 [m, 1, 4'-H (65a (2,5 + 2,6))], 3.70 [m, 2, 5'-H (65a (2,5 + 2,6))]. Anal. Calcd. for $C_{12}H_{11}Cl_2FN_2O_4$: C, 42.75; H, 3.29; N, 8.31. Found: C, 42.81; H, 3.43; N, 8.16.

25

30 2,6-Dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (66)

Method A (66)

6.24 grams (33.4 mmoles) of 35 was suspended in 150 ml of 1,2-dichloroethane while stirring. To this material at 80°C, 8.5 ml (33.4 mmoles) of BSA was added via a syringe to give a clear solution. To this solution were added 10.62 grams (33.4 mmoles) 35 of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranose and 7.0 ml (36.7 mmoles) of TMSOTf. The

reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 80°C for one hr. EtOAc (100 ml) was added to the reaction mixture. The EtOAc solution was extracted with saturated NaHCO₃ solution (300 ml x 2), saturated NaCl solution (50 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated *in vacuo*. The resulting yellowish-brown syrup was dissolved in a minimum volume of chloroform and transferred to a silica column (30 x 3 cm). The column was eluted with CHCl₃ while ultimately increasing solvent polarity to 1% MeOH/CHCl₃. The first spot eluted from the column was collected and evaporated *in vacuo* to reveal an oily yellow residue. The syrup was coevaporated with EtOH (25 ml x 2) to reveal a white precipitate. Recrystallization from MeOH afforded 4.47 grams (30.0%) of a mixture of the 2,5-dichloro and 2,6-dichloro isomers as colorless crystals. Fractional recrystallization yielded 2.815 grams (19%) of colorless crystalline 66. MP 154-155°C. MS (EI) m/e 444.0492 (6%, M⁺=444.0491). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.89 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,5}=2.0 Hz), 7.68 (d, 1, 4-H, J_{4,5}=8.5 Hz), 7.37 (dd, 1, 5-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.57 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.44 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.47, 4.39 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.15, 2.14, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 169.94, 169.48, 169.15 (3 x OCOCH₃), 140.06 (C3a and C2), 133.48 (C7a), 128.34 (C6), 123.78 (C5), 120.52 (C4), 111.71 (C7), 86.65 (C1'), 79.40 (C4'), 70.35 (C2'), 68.64 (C3'), 62.58 (C5'), 20.55, 20.26, 19.97 (3 x OCOCH₃).

Method B (66)

To a stirred mixture of 0.419 g (3.116 mmole) of CuCl₂ and 0.371 mL (2.807 mmole) of 90% t-BuONO in 5 mL of CH₃CN, was added dropwise a solution of 0.633 g (1.487 mmole) of 2-amino-6-chloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole in 3 mL of CH₃CN. After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 60 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 35 cm, eluted with CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.380 g (57%) of 66 as a white crystalline compound. MP 155-157°C. MS (EI) m/e 444.0487 (7%, M⁺=444.0491). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.89 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,5}=2.0 Hz), 7.68 (d, 1, 4-H, J_{4,5}=8.5 Hz), 7.37 (dd, 1, 5-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.57 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.45 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.47, 4.39 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.15, 2.14, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 169.91, 169.46, 169.12 (3 x OCOCH₃), 140.06, 140.02 (C3a and C2), 133.49 (C7a), 128.34 (C6), 123.78 (C5), 120.51 (C4), 111.69 (C7), 86.65 (C1'), 79.39 (C4'), 70.35 (C2'), 68.64 (C3'), 62.56 (C5'), 20.54, 20.25, 19.96 (3 x OCOCH₃).

2,6-Dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (67)

2,6-Dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (66) (1.8 grams) was dissolved in methanolic ammonia (35 ml). The reaction material was stirred in a pressure bottle for 5 hours at room temperature. Volatile materials were evaporated *in vacuo* to provide a white powdery precipitate. This residue was recrystallized from MeOH to yield 561 mg (2 crops, 85%) of 67 as colorless needles. MP 162-163°C. ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.30 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,5}=2.0 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1, 4-H, J_{4,5}=8.5 Hz), 7.31 (dd, 1, 5-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.49 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2,2'}=6.5 Hz), 5.35 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5,5'OH}=5.0 Hz), 5.28 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3,3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.46 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3,4'}=2.0 Hz), 4.00 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4,5'}=J_{4,5}=3.0 Hz), 3.70 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, J_{5,5'}=12.0 Hz). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 140.72 (C2), 140.17 (C3a), 133.56 (C7a), 127.86 (C6), 123.23 (C5), 128.34 (C6), 120.03 (C4), 113.15 (C7), 89.00 (C1'), 86.26 (C4'), 71.37 (C2'), 69.72 (C3'), 61.12 (C5').

2,5-Dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (72)

To a stirred mixture of 0.292 g (2.172 mmole) of CuCl₂ and 0.259 mL (1.960 mmole) of 90% t-BuONO in 4 mL of CH₃CN, was added dropwise a solution of 0.463 g (1.087 mmole) of 2-amino-5-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole in 2 mL of CH₃CN. After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 50 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (2 x 15 cm, eluted with CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.265 g (55%) of 72 as a white crystalline compound. MP 98-100°C. MS (EI) m/e 444.0487 (8%, M⁺=444.0491). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.81 (d, 1, 7-H, J_{7,6}=9.0 Hz), 7.77 (d, 1, 4-H, J_{4,6}=2.0 Hz), 7.42 (dd, 1, 6-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.57 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2,3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.42 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3,4'}=5.0 Hz), 4.43 (m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.13, 2.11, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 170.01, 169.52, 169.20 (3 x OCOCH₃), 142.17 (C3a), 140.66 (C2), 131.73 (C7a), 127.94 (C5), 123.91 (C6), 118.80 (C4), 113.19 (C7), 86.88 (C1'), 79.26 (C4'), 70.46 (C2'), 68.73 (C3'), 62.65 (C5'), 20.52, 20.29, 20.01 (3 x OCOCH₃).

2,5-Dichloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (73)

A solution of 0.226 g (0.508 mmole) of 72 in 10 mL of NH₃/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH (3 x) to give a solid. This solid was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.136 g (76%, based on C₁₂H₁₂Cl₂N₂O₄ MeOH) of 73 as white crystals. MP 102-150°C (melted over a large range of temperature). MS (Cl) m/e 319.0242 (37%,

- 55 -

$\text{MH}^+ = 319.0252$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.06 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-6}=9.0$ Hz), 7.73 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4-6}=2.0$ Hz), 7.30 (dd, 1, 6-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2}=8.0$ Hz), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2'-2'OH}=6.5$ Hz), 5.29 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3'-3'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 5.26 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5'-5'OH}=5.0$ Hz), 4.45 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2'-3'}=5.5$ Hz), 4.12 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3'-4'}=2.0$ Hz), 3.99 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4'-5'}=J_{4'-5}=3.5$ Hz), 3.69 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, $J_{5'-5'}=12.0$ Hz). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 142.36 (C3a), 141.40 (C2), 131.88 (C7a), 127.49 (C5), 123.32 (C6), 118.40 (C4), 114.51 (C7), 89.07 (C1'), 86.23 (C4'), 71.49 (C2'), 69.75 (C3'), 61.23 (C5').

2-Chloro-5-nitro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (74) and 2-Chloro-6-nitro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (75)

10 To a suspension of 3.952 g (20 mmole) of 19 in 100 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane, was added 5 mL (20 mmole) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 15 min to give a clear solution. This solution was cooled to ~20°C and treated with 7.0 g (22 mmole) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose and 4.638 mL (24 mmole) of TMSOTf at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with 200 mL of CHCl₃. The CHCl₃ solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (200 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (200 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (5 x 35 cm, eluted with CHCl₃ and 0.5% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave 6.50 g (71%, one spot on TLC) of 74 and 75 as a white foam. Fractional recrystallization of this foam (5 times from MeOH) give 1.59 g (17%) of the pure 6-nitro isomer 75. MP 127-129°C. MS (EI) m/e 455.0750 (2%, $M^+ = 455.0732$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.68 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-5}=2.0$ Hz), 8.21 (dd, 1, 5-H, $J_{5-4}=9.0$ Hz), 7.88 (d, 1, 4-H), 6.41 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2}=7.0$ Hz), 5.58 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2'-3'}=7.0$ Hz), 5.45 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3'-4'}=4.0$ Hz), 4.50, 4.40 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.15, 2.12, 2.03 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 170.12, 169.49, 169.25 (3 x OCOCH₃), 145.60 (C3a), 143.96 (C2), 143.65 (C6), 132.46 (C7a), 119.65 (C4), 118.92 (C5), 108.47 (C7), 86.96 (C1'), 79.67 (C4'), 71.12 (C2'), 68.75 (C3'), 62.56 (C5'), 20.39, 20.31, 20.03 (3 x OCOCH₃).

5-Amino-2-chloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-benzimidazole (76) and 6-Amino-2-chloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (77)

A sample of the foam containing 74 and 75 (3.96 g, 8.688 mmole, one spot on TLC) was dissolved in 90 mL of EtOH and was hydrogenated at room temperature, 50 psi for 1 day using ~0.30 g of Raney Nickel as catalyst (the reaction was monitored by TLC). The reaction mixture was then filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (5 x 45 cm, eluted with 0.5% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave 1.54 g (42%) of 77 as a white foam. MS (EI) m/e 425.0987 (14%, $M^+ = 425.0990$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.29 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4-5}=8.5$ Hz),

- 56 -

- 6.75 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-5}=1.5$ Hz), 6.61 (dd, 1, 5-H), 6.09 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2'}=6.5$ Hz), 5.57 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2-3'}=7-5$ Hz), 5.37 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3-4'}=5.5$ Hz), 5.19 (s, 2, 6-NH₂), 4.43 (dd, 1, 5'-H, $J_{5-4'}=2.5$ Hz, $J_{5-5'}=11.0$ Hz), 4.40 (m, 1, 4'-H), 4.36 (dd, 1, 5"-H, $J_{5-4'}=6.0$ Hz), 2.13, 2.09, 2.04 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 170.10, 169.45, 169.19 (3 x OCOCH₃),
- 5 146.03 (C6), 134.83 (C2), 134.06 (C7a), 132.92 (C3a), 119.35 (C4), 112.17 (C5), 94.72 (C7), 86.67 (C1'), 78.46 (C4'), 69.75 (C2'), 68.58 (C3'), 62.51 (C5'), 20.50, 20.21, 19.99 (3 x OCOCH₃).

- Further elution and evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave 1.86 g (50%) of 76 as a white foam. MS (EI) m/e 425.0976 (9%, M⁺=425.0990). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.40 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-6}=8.5$ Hz), 6.76 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4-6}=2.0$ Hz), 6.66 (dd, 1, 6-H), 6.10 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2'}=6.5$ Hz), 5.56 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2-3'}=7.0$ Hz), 5.39 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3-4'}=5.0$ Hz), 5.10 (br. s, 2, 5-NH₂), 4.40 (m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.13, 2.10, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 169.91, 169.52, 169.11 (3 x OCOCH₃), 145.31 (C5), 142.74 (C3a), 137.80 (C2), 124.66 (C7a), 112.60 (C6), 111.62 (C7), 102.23 (C4), 86.57 (C1'), 78.89 (C4'), 70.05 (C2'), 68.78 (C3'), 62.69 (C5'), 20.45, 20.26, 19.98 (3 x OCOCH₃).

5-Amino-2-chloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (78)

- A solution of 0.363 g (0.852 mmole) of 76 in 10 mL of NH₃/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The residue was recrystallized from MeOH/Et₂O to give 0.203 g (2 crops, 79%) of 78 as beige crystals. MP ~154°C (dec.). MS (EI) m/e 299.0675 (10%, M⁺=299.0673). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.56 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-6}=8.5$ Hz), 6.73 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4-6}=2.0$ Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1, 6-H), 5.77 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2'}=7$ Hz), 5.39 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2-2'OH}=6.5$ Hz), 5.18 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3-3'OH}=4.5$ Hz), 5.11 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5-5'OH}=5.0$ Hz), 4.90 (s, 2, 5-NH₂), 4.44 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2-3'}=6.0$ Hz), 4.09 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3-4'}=2.5$ Hz), 3.91 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4-5'}=3.5$ Hz), 3.65 (*t, 2, 5'-H). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 144.82 (C5), 142.77 (C3a), 138.25 (C2), 125.13 (C7a), 112.67 (C7), 112.22 (C6), 101.83 (C4), 88.81 (C1'), 85.48 (C4'), 70.89 (C2'), 69.61 (C3'), 61.31 (C5').

6-Amino-2-chloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (79)

- A solution of 0.283 g (0.665 mmole) of 77 in 10 mL of NH₃/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.170 g (2 crops, 85%) of 79 as beige crystals. MP ~170°C (dec.). MS (EI) m/e 299.0862 (16%, M⁺=299.0673). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.25 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4-5}=8.5$ Hz), 6.87 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7-5}=2.0$ Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1, 5-H), 5.75 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1-2'}=7.5$ Hz), 5.43 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2-2'OH}=6-5$ Hz), 5.18 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3-3'OH}=5.0$ Hz), 5.04 (s, 2, 6-NH₂), 5.03 (t,

- 57 -

1, 5'-OH, $J_{5'-5'OH} = 5.5$ Hz), 4.48 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2'-3'} = 6.0$ Hz), 4.07 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3'-4'} = 3.0$ Hz), 3.90 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4'-5'} = 4.0$ Hz, $J_{4'-5'} = 5.0$ Hz), 3.66 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, $J_{5'-5'} = 12.0$ Hz). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 145.34 (C6), 135.63 (C2), 134.34 (C7a), 133.18 (C3a), 118.83 (C4), 111.71 (C5), 95.79 (C7), 88.79 (C1'), 85.24 (C4'), 70.17 (C2'), 69.70 (C3'), 61.55 (C5').

5 **4,6-Dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-1-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (81a)**

A mixture of 4,6-dichloro-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (28a, 0.99 g, 3.4 mmole) and 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose (1.71 g, 5.36 mmole) was heated at 170°C for 1.5 hr under reduced pressure. The resulting mixture was dissolved in 20 mL of CHCl₃ and was chromatographed on a SiO₂ column, (2 x 20 cm). Elution of the column with 10 hexane:EtOAc (80:20, v/v) and evaporation of appropriate fraction gave 0.67 gm (34%) of 81a: m.p. 116-120°C; 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.00 (d, 1H, J = 1.6 Hz, 7H), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 1.5 Hz, 5H), 6.15 (d, 1H, $J_{1'-2'} = 6.8$ Hz, 1'H), 5.53 (t, 1H, $J_{2'-3'} = 6.7$ Hz, 2'H), 5.49-5.45 (m, 1H, 3'H), 4.56-4.53 (m, 2H, 4'H and 5'H), 4.37-4.33 (m, 2H, 5'H), 2.15, 2.12, 1.92 (3s, 9H, 3 x Ac).

15 **4,6-Dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (81b)**

A mixture of 81a (0.57 g, 1.1 mmole) and MeOH-NH₃ (20 mL) were stirred at room temperature for 10 hr. The excess of MeOH and NH₃, was removed under reduced pressure. The product thus obtained was chromatographed over SiO₂ column (2 x 14 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column with CHCl₃:MeOH (98:2, v/v) the product which 20 was crystallized from the mixture of MeOH-H₂O to give 0.268 g (62.4%) of 81b: m.p. 162°C; 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.59 (d, 1H, J = 1.7 Hz, 7H), 7.68 (d, 1H, J = 1.7 Hz, 5H), 5.82 (d, 1H, $J_{1'-2'} = 7.62$ Hz, 1'H), 5.50-5.47 (m, 2H, exchanges with D₂O, 2'OH and 5'OH), 5.29 (d, 1H, exchanges with D₂O), 4.41 (q, 1H, $J_{2'-3'} = 6.06$ Hz, 2'H), 4.16 (bs, 1H, 3'H), 4.04 (bs, 1H, 4'H), 3.75 (m, 2H, S'H and 5"H). Anal. Calcd. for (C₁₃H₁₁N₂O₄F₃Cl₂): C, 40.33; H, 2.86; N, 7.23; Found: C, 40.02; H, 2.66; N, 6.74.

2,4-Dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole and 2,4-Dichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-α-D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole

For the preparation of 1-O-chloro-2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-ribofuranose, HCl gas was allowed to pass through a solution of 1-O-p-nitrobenzoyl-2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-β-D-30 ribofuranose (0.774 g, 1.36 mmol) in 5 mL of dry CH₂Cl₂ at 0°C for 15 min. The resulting suspension was quickly filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was coevaporated with MeCN and then dissolved in 5 mL of dry MeCN for immediate use in the subsequent glycosylation reaction.

To a mixture of 0.289 g (1.133 mmol) of 41c in 5 mL of MeCN, was added 0.283 35 mL (1.133 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 25 min. This

solution was reacted with the above MeCN solution of the carbohydrate and 0.285 mL (1.473 mmol) of TMSOTf at 80°C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (60 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 35 cm, eluted with 10%, 15%, 20% EtOAc/hexane). Evaporation of fractions 20-26 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.31 g (42%) of the β-anomer as a syrup. MS: (Cl) m/e 657.1561 (1%, MH⁺=657.1535). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.05 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.69 (s, 1, 5-H), 7.35, 6.95 (2 x m, 15, 3 x Ph), 6.08 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.0 Hz), 4.73 ~ 4.24 (m, 9, 2'-H, 3'-H, 4'-H, and 3 x PhCH₂), 3.75 (dd, 1, 5'-H, 10 J_{4',5'}=2.0 Hz, J_{5',5''}=11.0 Hz), 3.58 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{4',5'}=3.0 Hz).

Evaporation of fractions 34-41 (20 mL per fraction) gave 0.262 g (35%) of the α-anomer as a syrup. MS: (Cl) m/e 657.1517 (1%, MH⁺=657.1535). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.94 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.66 (s, 1, 5-H), 7.30, 7.08, 6.72 (3 x m, 15, 3 x Ph), 6.51 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=4.5 Hz), 4.69 ~ 4.07 (m, 9, 2'-H, 3'-H, 4'-H, and 3 x PhCH₂), 3.73 (dd, 1, 5'-H, 15 J_{4',5'}=2.5 Hz, J_{5',5''}=11.0 Hz), 3.62 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{4',5'}=4.5 Hz).

2,4-Dichloro-1-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)-6-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (81c)

To a solution of 0.29 g (0.441 mmol) of the β-anomer (see previous prep.) in 6 mL of CH₂Cl₂, was added dropwise 4.41 mL of 1 M BCl₃ at -78°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 2 hr and then at -40°C for 2 hr MeOH (3 mL) was added and stirring 20 was continued at -40°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was suspended in a small amount of CHCl₃ and then filtered. The solid product was washed with portions of CHCl₃ and dried *in vacuo* to give 0.146 g (86%) of 81c as a white solid. MS: (El) m/e 25 386.0038 (14%, M⁺=386.0048). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.75 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.76 (s, 1, 5-H), 5.97 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1',2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.55 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2',2'OH}=6.0 Hz), 5.43 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.35 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.43 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.15 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=1.5 Hz), 4.06 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5''}=2.5 Hz), 3.69 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H).

2-Chloro-4,5-dibromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (84) and 30 2-Chloro-5-bromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (86)

To a stirred mixture of 1.228 g (5.498 mmole) of CuBr₂ and 0.654 mL (4.949 mmole) of 90% t-BuONO in 10 mL of CH₃CN, was added dropwise a solution of 1.170 g (2.748 mmole) of 78 in 3 mL of CH₃CN. After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 100 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc 35 solution was washed with H₂O (100 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL x 2), sat. NaCl

solution (100 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evap rated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (4.1 x 30 cm, luted with CHCl_3). Evaporation of fractions 59-78 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.600 g (38%) of 84 as a white solid. MP 202-203°C. MS (EI) m/e 565.9109 (4%, $M^+ = 565.9091$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.74 (2 x d, 2, 6-H and 7-H, $J_{6,7} = 8.5$ Hz), 6.26 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1,2'} = 6.5$ Hz), 5.53 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'} = 7.0$ Hz), 5.42 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 4.5$ Hz), 4.42 (m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.14, 2.11, 2.01 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 169.92, 169.42, 169.14 (3 x OCOCH_3), 141.56 (C3a), 140.91 (C2), 132.12 (C7a), 128.03 (C6), 118.58 (C5), 114.56 (C4), 112.60 (C7), 87.12 (C1'), 79.41 (C4'), 70.60 (C2'), 68.66 (C3'), 62.55 (C5'), 20.47, 20.22, 19.94 (3 x OCOCH_3).

Evaporation of fractions 89-125 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.405 g (30%) of 86 as a white crystals. MP 129-130°C. MS (EI) m/e 487.9973 (5%, $M^+ = 487.9986$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) d 7.91 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4,6} = 2.0$ Hz), 7.76 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,6} = 8.5$ Hz), 7.53 (dd, 1, 6-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1,2'} = 6.5$ Hz), 5.56 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'} = 7.0$ Hz), 5.42 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 5.0$ Hz), 4.43 (m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.14, 2.11, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 170.01, 169.52, 169.19 (3 x OCOCH_3), 142.61 (C3a), 140.50 (C2), 132.05 (C7a), 126.51 (C6), 121.73 (C4), 115.71 (C5), 113.58 (C7), 86.87 (C1'), 79.26 (C4'), 70.44 (C2'), 68.73 (C3'), 62.64 (C5'), 20.53, 20.29, 20.01 (3 x OCOCH_3).

5-Bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (87)

A solution of 0.304 g (0.621 mmole) of 86 in 10 mL of NH_3/MeOH was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 h. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.192 g (85%) of 87 as white crystals. MP 154-155°C. MS (CI) m/e 362.9735 (40%, $MH^+ = 362.9747$). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.01 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,6} = 8.5$ Hz), 7.87 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4,6} = 2.0$ Hz), 7.41 (dd, 1, 6-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1,2'} = 8.0$ Hz), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2',2''\text{OH}} = 6.5$ Hz), 5.26 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3''\text{OH}} = 4.5$ Hz), 5.25 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5''\text{OH}} = 5.0$ Hz), 4.44 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'} = 5.5$ Hz), 4.13 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 2.5$ Hz), 3.98 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4',5'} = J_{4',5''} = 3.5$ Hz), 3.68 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5''-H, $J_{5',5''} = 12.0$ Hz). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 142.81 (C3a), 141.23 (C2), 132.20 (C7a), 125.92 (C6), 121.32 (C4), 115.27 (C5), 114.89 (C7), 89.08 (C1'), 86.21 (C4'), 71.47 (C2'), 69.73 (C3'), 61.22 (C5').

2-Chloro-6,7-dibromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-benzimidazole (88) and 2-Chloro-6-bromo-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (89)

To a stirred mixture of 0.564 g (2.525 mmole) of CuBr_2 and 0.300 mL (2.270 mmole) of 90% t-BuONO in 5 mL of CH_3CN , was added dropwise a solution of 0.538 g (1.263 mmole) of 77 in 3 mL of CH_3CN . After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 60 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc

- solution was washed with H_2O (50 mL), sat. $NaHCO_3$ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. $NaCl$ solution (50 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 45 cm, luted with $CHCl_3$). Evaporation of fractions 11-22 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from $MeOH$ twice gave 0.198 g of 89 as white crystals.
- 5 Evaporation of fractions 23-26 and recrystallization from $MeOH$ gave 0.015 g of 88. The mother liquors were evaporated and the residue was rechromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 45 cm, eluted with $CHCl_3$). Evaporation of fractions 24-34 and recrystallization from $MeOH$ twice gave an additional 0.072 g of 89 as white crystals. Fractions 37-56 were evaporated and the residue was repurified by repeating the column
- 10 chromatography. Evaporation of the appropriate fractions and recrystallization from $MeOH$ gave an additional 0.070 g of 88 as white crystals. The total yield of 88 was 0.085 g (12%). MP 121-122°C. MS (EI) m/e 565.9092 (1%, $M^+ = 565.9091$). 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 7.74 (d, 1, 5-H, $J_{5,4} = 8.5$ Hz), 7.65 (d, 1, 4-H), 7.25 ("br. s", 1, 1'-H), 5.80 (dd, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',1'} = 5.0$ Hz, $J_{2',3'} = 7.5$ Hz), 5.44 (t, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 7.5$ Hz), 4.46 (dd, 1, 5'-H, $J_{5',4'} = 3.0$ Hz,
- 15 $J_{5',5''} = 12.0$ Hz), 4.39 (m, 1, 4'-H), 4.29 (dd, 1, 5"-H, $J_{5',4''} = 6.0$ Hz), 2.13, 2.08, 2.05 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}C NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 169.97, 169.45, 169.33 (3 x $\underline{OCOCH_3}$), 141.51 (C3a), 141.09 (C2), 133.28 (C7a), 128.37 (C5), 121.92 (C6), 120.07 (C4), 105.20 (C7), 86.58 (C1'), 78.06 (C4'), 71.34 (C2'), 68.24 (C3'), 62.08 (C5'), 20.43, 20.08, 20.01 (3 x $\underline{OCOCH_3}$). The total yield of 89 was 0.270 g (44%). MP 169-170°C. MS (EI) m/e 487.9973 (9%, $M^+ = 487.9986$). 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 8.01 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,5} = 1.5$ Hz), 7.63 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4,5} = 8.5$ Hz), 7.49 (m, 1, 5-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'} = 7.0$ Hz), 5.57 (t, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'} = 7.0$ Hz), 5.44 (dd, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 4.5$ Hz), 4.47, 4.39 (2 x m, 3, 4'-H and 5'-H), 2.16, 2.14, 2.02 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ^{13}C NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 169.99, 169.52, 169.19 (3 x $\underline{OCOCH_3}$), 140.38 (C3a), 139.98 (C2), 133.97 (C7a), 126.52 (C5), 120.91 (C4), 116.33 (C6), 114.50 (C7), 86.61 (C1'), 79.43 (C4'), 70.39 (C2'), 68.66 (C3'), 62.61 (C5'), 20.71, 20.31, 20.02 (3 x $\underline{OCOCH_3}$).
- 6-Bromo-2-chloro-1-(β -D-ribofuranosyl)benzimidazole (90)
- A solution of 0.176 g (0.359 mmole) of 89 in 10 mL of $NH_3/MeOH$ was stirred in a pressure bottle at room temperature for 5 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with $MeOH$ (3 x, bath temperature < 40°C). The resulting solid was recrystallized from $MeOH$ to give 0.097 g (2 crops, 74%) of 90 as white crystals. MP 152-153°C. MS (EI) m/e 361.9685 (10%, $M^+ = 361.9669$). 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 8.43 (d, 1, 7-H, $J_{7,5} = 2.0$ Hz), 7.59 (d, 1, 4-H, $J_{4,5} = 8.5$ Hz), 7.43 (dd, 1, 5-H), 5.88 (d, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'} = 8.0$ Hz), 5.49 (d, 1, 2'-OH, $J_{2',2'OH} = 6.5$ Hz), 5.34 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5'OH} = 4.5$ Hz), 5.27 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3'OH} = 4.5$ Hz), 4.45 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',3'} = 5.5$ Hz), 4.14, (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',4'} = 2.0$ Hz), 4.00 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4',5'} = J_{4',5''} = 3.5$ Hz), 3.70 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, $J_{5',5''} = 12.0$ Hz). ^{13}C

NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 140.70 (C2), 140.49 (C3a), 134.02 (C7a), 125.95 (C5), 120.46 (C4), 116.01 (C7), 115.87 (C6), 88.99 (C1'), 86.32 (C4'), 71.40 (C2'), 69.79 (C3'), 61.15 (C5').

1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole (91a) and
1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-benzyl-α-D-ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole

For the preparation of 1-O-chloro-2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-ribofuranose, HCl gas was allowed to pass through a solution of 1-O-p-nitrobenzoyl-2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranose (1.479 g, 2.6 mmol) in 10 mL of dry CH₂Cl₂ at 0°C for 15 min. The resulting suspension was quickly filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was coevaporated with dry MeCN and then dissolved in 5 mL of dry MeCN for immediate use in the subsequent glycosylation reaction. To a mixture of 13 (0.512 g, 2 mmol) in 10 mL of dry MeCN, was added 0.5 mL (2 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 20 min. This solution was treated with the above MeCN solution of the blocked carbohydrate and 0.464 mL (2.4 mmol) of TMSOTf at 70°C for 20 min. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 38 cm, eluted with hexane, 10%, 15% EtOAc/hexane). Evaporation of fractions 30-37 (15 mL per fraction) gave 0.593 g (45%) of 91a as a colorless syrup. MS: (EI) m/e 658.0780 (2%, M⁺=658.0774). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.93 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.35, 6.92 (2 x m, 15, 3 x PhCH₂), 5.99 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=8.0 Hz), 4.72, 4.58, 4.35 (3 x m, 9, 2'-H, 3'-H, 4'-H, and 3 x PhCH₂), 3.76 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{4',5'}=2.0 Hz, J_{5',5}=11.0 Hz), 3.65 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{4',5'}=2.5 Hz). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 142.00 (C2), 138.40 (C3a), 137.81, 137.44, 136.74 (3 x PhCH₂), 131.34 (C7a), 128.08, 128.03, 127.59, 127.40, 127.32, 127.28, 126.97 (3 x PhCH₂ and C4), 124.64, 122.52 (C5 and C6), 112.65 (C7), 87.46 (C1'), 83.03, 77.08, 74.92 (C2', C3', and C4'), 72.43, 71.44, 71.28 (3 x PhCH₂), 69.22 (C5').

Evaporation of fractions 44-68 (15 mL per fraction) gave 0.69 g of the α-anomer as a syrup. This sample contained a small amount of the starting material (13) and was further purified on a silica column (1.9 x 16 cm, eluted with CHCl₃, 0.5% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 5-10 (15 mL per fraction) gave 0.619 g (47%) of the α-anomer as a syrup. MS: (EI) m/e 658.0781 (1%, M⁺=658.0774). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.82 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.32, 7.15, 6.77 (3 x m, 15, 3 x PhCH₂), 6.42 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=4.5 Hz), 4.58, 4.34, 4.13 (m, t, d, 9, 2'-H, 3'-H, 4'-H, and 3 x PhCH₂), 3.68 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, J_{5',5}=11.0 Hz). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 141.18 (C2), 138.16, 137.89, 137.43, 136.81 (C3a and 3 x PhCH₂), 133.19 (C7a), 127.99, 127.93, 127.56, 127.49, 127.38, 127.22, 126.98, 126.38 (3 x PhCH₂)

and C4), 123.91, 121.91 (C5 and C6), 113.95 (C7), 87.56 (C1'), 80.77, 77.60, 77.31 (C2', C3', and C4'), 72.77, 71.36, 71.82 (3 x PhCH₂), 69.50 (C5').

1-(β-D-Ribofuranosyl)-2,4,5,6-tetrachlorobenzimidazole (92)

To a solution of 0.565 g (0.858 mmol) of 91a in 8 mL of CH₂Cl₂, was added 5 dropwise 8.58 mL of 1 M BCl₃/CH₂Cl₂ at -78°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 2 hr and then at -40°C for 2 hr. MeOH (2.5 mL) was added dropwise and stirring was continued at -40°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (75 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was suspended in a small 10 amount of CHCl₃ and then filtered. The solid product was washed with portions of CHCl₃ and recrystallized from MeOH to give 0.271 g (81%) of 92 as white crystals. MP: 172-175°C (dec). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.62 (s, 1, 7-H), 5.89 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1'.2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.52 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2'.2'OH}=6.5 Hz), 5.46 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5'.5'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.31 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3'.3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.39 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2'.3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3'.4'}=2.0 Hz), 4.04 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4'.5'}=J_{4'.5'}=2.5 Hz), 3.72 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, J_{5'.5"}=12.0 Hz). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 142.44 (C2), 138.56 (C3a), 131.95 (C7a), 126.91 (C4), 124.52, 122.39 (C5 and C6), 113.55 (C7), 89.58 (C1'), 86.44 (C4'), 71.95 (C2'), 69.53 (C3'), 60.82 (C5'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₀Cl₄N₂O₄: C, 37.14; H, 2.60; N, 7.22. Found: C, 37.01; H, 2.60; N, 7.01.

2-Chloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-4,5,6-tribromobenzimidazole (102)

20 To a suspension of 0.779 g (2 mmol) of 20 in 10 mL of dry MeCN, was added 0.5 mL (2 mmol) of BSA. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 15 min. This solution was treated with 0.700 g (2.2 mmol) of 1,2,3,5-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranose and 0.43 mL (2.2 mmol) of TMSOTf at 75°C for 1 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The EtOAc solution was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (50 mL x 2), 25 sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was recrystallized from MeOH to give 1.1 g of the blocked nucleoside as white crystals. This product contained some impurity by TLC and was further purified on a silica column (1.9 x 25 cm, eluted with CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 8-20 (20 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.974 g (2 crops, 75%) of 102 as white crystalline 30 needles. MP: 163-165°C. MS: (EI) m/e 643.8201 (2%, M⁺=643.8196). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.25 (5, 1, 7-H), 6.25 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1'.2'}=7.0 Hz), 5.53 (t, 1, 2'-H, J_{2'.3'}=7.0 Hz), 5.43 (dd, 1, 3'-H, J_{3'.4'}=4.5 Hz), 4.47 (dd, 5'-H, J_{5'.4'}=5.0 Hz, J_{5'.5'}=11.5 Hz), 4.46 (m, 1, 4'-H), 4.37 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{5'.4'}=1.5 Hz), 2.15, 2.13, 2.01 (3 x s, 9, 3 x Ac). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 169.93, 169.42, 169.16 (3 x COCH₃), 140.70 (C2), 140.85 (C3a), 132.58 (C7a), 121.30 (C5), 119.07 (C6), 115.93 (C4), 115.72 (C7), 86.94 (C1'), 79.74 (C4'), 70.73

(C2'), 68.62 (C3'), 62.53 (C5'), 20.66, 20.26, 19.97 (3 x COCH₃). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₈H₁₆Br₃CIN₂O₇: C, 33.39; H, 2.49; N, 4.33. Found: C, 33.30; H, 2.33; N 4.31.

2-Chloro-1-(β -D-rib furanosyl)-4,5,6-tribromobenzimidazole (103)

- A mixture of 0.430 g (0.664 mmol) of the blocked nucleoside (102) and 0.216 g (3.317 mmol) of KCN in 13 mL of 70% EtOH was stirred at room temperature for 6 hr. The reaction mixture was diluted with 75 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with H₂O (50 mL), sat. NaCl solution (50 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on a silica column (1.9 x 15 cm, eluted successively with CHCl₃, 1%, 2%, 3% MeOH/CHCl₃). Evaporation of fractions 43-60 (10 mL per fraction) and recrystallization from MeOH/MeCN gave 0.157 g (2 crops, 44%) of 103 as white crystals. MP: 168-170°C. MS: (FAB) m/e 518.7947 (28%, M⁺=518.7957). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.76 (s, 1, 7-H), 5.87 (d, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=8.0 Hz), 5.51 (d, 1, 2'-OH, J_{2',2'OH}=6.0 Hz), 5.42 (t, 1, 5'-OH, J_{5',5'OH}=4.5 Hz), 5.30 (d, 1, 3'-OH, J_{3',3'OH}=4.5 Hz), 4.37 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',3'}=5.5 Hz), 4.14 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',4'}=2.0 Hz), 4.02 (m, 1, 4'-H, J_{4',5'}=J_{4',5'}=2.5 Hz), 3.71 (m, 2, 5'-H and 5"-H, J_{5',5'}=12.0 Hz). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 142.32 (C2), 140.94 (C3a), 132.50 (C7a), 120.62 (C5), 118.44 (C6), 117.10 (C7), 115.34 (C4), 89.58 (C1'), 86.50 (C4'), 71.93 (C2'), 69.63 (C3'), 60.89 (C5'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₀Br₃CIN₂O₄ 0.3 MeCN: C, 28.36; H, 2.06; N, 6.04. Found: C, 28.25; H, 1.84; N, 5.90. (the Content of 0.3 MeCN was also indicated by ¹H NMR.)
- 20 2-Azido-5,6-dichloro-1-(2-deoxy-3,5-di-O-p-toluoyl- β -D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)benzimidazole (110a)

Compound 110 (5.74 g, 10 mmol) was stirred with 4.90 g (100 mmol) of LiN₃ in 50 mL of dry DMF at 70°C for 16 hr. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with toluene. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc/half sat. NaCl solution (250 mL/200 mL). The EtOAc layer was washed with half sat. NaCl solution (200 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), and evaporated. The residue was dried under oil-pump vacuum at room temperature for 2 hr to give 110a as a yellowish foam (6.0 g, ~103%). This sample was pure by TLC and was used directly in the subsequent reactions without further purification. Analytical sample was obtained by recrystallization from EtOH. MP: 82-85°C. MS: (EI) m/e 579.1065 (2.5%, M⁺=579.1076). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 7.97, 7.81 (2 x s, 2, 7-H and 4-H), 7.96, 7.88, 7.36, 7.30 (4 x d, 8, Ph, J=8.0 Hz), 6.36 (dd, 1, 1'-H, J_{1,2'}=8.5 Hz, J_{1,2'}=6.0 Hz), 5.72 (m, 1, 3'-H, J_{3',2'}=7.0 Hz, J_{3',2'}=2.0 Hz, J_{3',4'}=3.5 Hz), 4.71 (dd, 1, 5'-H, J_{5',4'}=3.5 Hz, J_{5',5'}=12.0 Hz), 4.63 (dd, 1, 5"-H, J_{5',4'}=5.0 Hz), 4.53 (m, 1, 4'-H), 3.05 (m, 1, 2'-H, J_{2',2'}=15.0 Hz), 2.60 (m, 1, 2"-H), 2.40, 2.36 (2 x s, 6, 2 x Me). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 165.46, 165.31 (2 x p-MePhCO), 149.07 (C2), 144.04, 143.78 (2 x

p-MePhCO), 140.52 (C3a), 132.63 (C7a), 129.49, 129.24 129.20 (2 x p-MePhCO), 126.55, 126.43, 125.35, 124.57 (2 x p-MePhCO, C6, and C5), 118.98 (C4), 112.78 (C7), 83.78 (C1'), 81.19 (C4'), 73.90 (C3'), 63.72 (C5'), 35.31 (C2'), 21.15, 21.10 (2 x p-MePhCO). Anal.

Calcd. for $C_{28}H_{23}Cl_2N_5O_5$: C, 57.94; H, 3.99; N, 12.07. Found: C, 58.07; H, 4.12; N,

5 11.94.

2-Azido-5,6-dichloro-1-(2-deoxy- β -D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)benzimidazole (110b)

Compound 110a (6.0 g, prepared from 10 mmol of 110) was treated with 150 mL of NH_3 /MeOH at room temperature for 2 days. The reaction mixture was evaporated and coevaporated with MeOH. The resulting solid was triturated with $CHCl_3$ (50 mL). The

10 $CHCl_3$ suspension was kept at 0°C for 1 hr and was then filtered. The solid was washed with portions of $CHCl_3$ and then recrystallized from MeOH to give 2.462 g (2 crops) of 110b as white needles. The $CHCl_3$ filtrate was concentrated to 20 mL and kept in a freezer (~ -15°C) overnight. The precipitate was collected and recrystallized from MeOH to give additional 0.569 g (2 crops) of 110b. The total yield was 3.031 g (88% from 110).

15 MP: 159-161°C (dec). MS: (EI) m/e 343.0232 (30%, $M^+ = 343.0239$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 8.26 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.81 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.09 (dd, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'} = 9.0$ Hz, $J_{1',2'} = 6.0$ Hz), 5.36 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3'OH} = 4.5$ Hz), 5.15 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5'OH} = 5.0$ Hz), 4.39 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',2'} = 6.5$ Hz, $J_{3',2'} = 2.5$ Hz, $J_{3',4'} = 3.0$ Hz), 3.84 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4',5'} = 3.5$ Hz), 3.65 (m, 2, 5'-H), 2.50 (m, 1, 2'-H, $J_{2',2'} = 13.0$ Hz), 2.09 (m, 1, 2"-H). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 149.00 (C2), 140.90 (C3a), 132.11 (C7a), 125.13, 124.25 (C5 and C6), 118.79 (C4), 114.11 (C7), 87.52 (C4'), 84.08 (C1'), 70.15 (C3'), 60.10 (C5'), 38.54 (C2'). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{12}H_{11}Cl_2N_5O_3$: C, 41.88; H, 3.22; N, 20.35. Found: C, 42.01; H, 3.13; N, 19.98.

2-Amino-5,6-dichloro-1-(2-deoxy- β -D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)benzimidazole (113)

A mixture of 110b (1.032 g, 3 mmol) and Ra-Ni (0.24 g, wet) in 30 mL of EtOH was 25 hydrogenated (50 psi of H_2) at room temperature for 6 hr. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was suspended in 20 mL of MeCN and the suspension was filtered to give 0.856 g (90%, 2 crops) of 113 as a white solid.

Analytical sample (as white needles) was obtained by recrystallization from MeOH/MeCN. MP: 216-221°C (dec.). MS: (EI) m/e 317.0340 (37%, $M^+ = 317.0334$). 1H NMR (DMSO-d₆):

30 d 7.71 (s, 1, 7-H), 7.29 (s, 1, 4-H), 6.93 (br s, 2, 2-NH₂), 6.23 (dd, 1, 1'-H, $J_{1',2'} = 8.5$ Hz, $J_{1',2'} = 6.0$ Hz), 5.40 (t, 1, 5'-OH, $J_{5',5'OH} = 4.5$ Hz), 5.34 (d, 1, 3'-OH, $J_{3',3'OH} = 4.0$ Hz), 4.40 (m, 1, 3'-H, $J_{3',2'} = 7.0$ Hz, $J_{3',2'} = 2.0$ Hz, $J_{3',4'} = 2.5$ Hz), 3.82 (m, 1, 4'-H, $J_{4',5'} = 2.5$ Hz), 3.68 (m, 2, 5'-H), 2.40 (m, 1, 2"-H, $J_{2',2'} = 13.0$ Hz), 2.05 (m, 1, 2"-H). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d₆): d 155.85 (C2), 143.16 (C3a), 132.40 (C7a), 122.94, 119.77 (C5 and C6), 115.35 (C4), 110.69

(C7), 86.91 (C4'), 83.87 (C1'), 70.20 (C3'), 60.74 (C5'), 38.05 (C2'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₂H₁₃Cl₂N₃O₃: C, 45.30; H, 4.12; N, 13.21. Found: C, 45.44; H, 4.10; N, 13.28.

2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-β-D-arabinofuranosyl)benzimidazole (133)

Compound 5 (598 mg 2.7 mmole) was dissolved in dry CH₃CN (60 ml) and 97% NaH (80 mg, 3 mmole) was added. The mixture was stirred under N₂ for 1 hour at room temperature. Then 2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-arabinofuranosyl chloride (prepared from 2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-1-O-p-nitrobenzoyl-D-arabinofuranose) (1.83 g, 3 mmole) dissolved in dry CH₃CN (20 ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred under N₂ for overnight at room temperature. The reaction solution was filtered through Celite. The filtrate was evaporated to give a syrup and this syrup was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica gel (Kieselgel 60, 230-400 mesh) and eluted with CH₂Cl₂. The fractions containing 133 were combined and evaporated to give 1.6 g (95.0%) of 133. (IR KBr cm⁻¹: 1140-1060 (C-O-C)).

2,5,6-Trichloro-1-(β-D-arabinofuranosyl)benzimidazole (134)

Compound 133 (1.25 g 2 mmole) was dissolved in dry CH₂Cl₂ (20 ml) and this solution was cooled in an acetone-dry ice bath. A 1 M solution of BCl₃ in CH₂Cl₂ (10 ml) was added and the mixture was stirred at -70° for 4.5 hr. At this point TLC showed no starting material. CH₃OH (10 ml) was added and the solution was made neutral with NH₄OH. The solution was evaporated *in vacuo* to dryness. H₂O (20 ml) was added and the solution was extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to obtain a syrup. This syrup was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica gel (Kieselgel 60, 230-400 mesh) with CH₂Cl₂-MeOH (20:1) as eluent solvent to give 134. Yield 0.551 g, 77.9%.

2,4,5,6,7-Pentachloro-1-[(1,3-dibenzyloxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole (154)

The title compound was prepared from 2,4,5,6,7-pentachlorobenzimidazole (14) (0.29 g, 1.0 mmole), CH₃CN (35 mL), NaH (97%, oil dispersion, 0.033 g, 1.4 mmole) and [(1,3-bis(benzyloxy)-2-propoxy)methyl]chloride (0.49 g, 1.5 mmole) in CH₃CN (10 mL) to afford an oil. The resulting oil was purified by flash column chromatography (2 x 20 cm) (230-400 mesh) prepared with wet SiO₂ in hexane. Elution with hexane:EtOAc (8:2, v/v) gave 0.32 g of the blocked product 154 as an oil. Although the ¹H NMR spectra revealed a small amount of an impurity, the compound was used without further purification for the next step.

2,4,5,6,7-Pentachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole (155)

Compound 155 (0.52 g, 51%) was prepared from 154 (1.5 g, 2.6 mmole), BCl₃ (5M solution in CH₂Cl₂, 14 mL), CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL) and MeOH (20 mL) by the method described

for 166 which on recrystallization from EtOAc gave 155: m.p. 155°; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): d 5.76 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.63 (t, 2 H, exchanges with D_2O , 2 x OH), 3.54-3.48 (m, 1 H, C-3'), 3.43-3.25 (m, 4 H, C-4' and 5'H). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_9\text{N}_2\text{Cl}_5\text{O}_3$: C, 33.46; H, 2.28; N, 7.09. Found: C, 33.60; H, 2.15; N, 6.91.

5 2-Methoxy-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-[(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl]benzimidazole (157a) and
2-Amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-[(1,3-Dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl] benzimidazole (156)

A mixture of 155 (0.28 g, 0.71 mmole) and methanolic ammonia (methanol saturated with ammonia at 0°C 60 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 36 hr in a pressure bottle. The resulting mixture was evaporated to dryness and was purified by flash column chromatography (3 x 15 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{MeOH}$ (97:3, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions followed by recrystallization from MeOH gave 0.06 gm (20 %) of 157a: m.p. 192°C; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): d 5.71 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.59 (t, 2 H, exchanges with D_2O , 2 x OH), 4.19 (s, 3H, OCH_3), 3.75-3.21 (m, 5 H, C-3', C-4' and C-S'). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}\text{N}_2\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_4$: C, 36.92; H, 3.07; N, 7.17. Found: C, 37.20; H, 2.99; N, 6.93.

Further elution of the $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{MeOH}$ (90:1, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions followed by recrystallization from the mixture of DMSO- H_2O gave 0.2 g (69 %) of 156: m.p. 268°C; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): d 7.40 (bs, 2 H, exchanges with D_2O , NH_2), 5.75 (s, 2 H, C1'), 4.77 (bs, 1 H, exchanges with D_2O , 2 x OH), 3.58-3.34 (m, 5 H, C-3', C-4' and C-S'). Anal. Calcd. for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_3\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_3$: C, 35.20; H, 2.93; N, 11.20. Found: C, 35.37; H, 3.02; N, 10.86.

2,4,5,6,7-Pentachloro-1-(2-acetoxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole (165)

NaH (0.12 g, 3.0 mmole, 60% oil dispersion) was added to a stirred suspension of 2,4,5,6,7-pentachlorobenzimidazole (14) (1.0 g, 3.4 mmole) in dry CH_3CN (120 mL) under a N_2 atmosphere. The solution was stirred until H_2 evolution has ceased and a clear solution was obtained (20 min.). (2-Acetoxyethoxy) methyl bromide (0.68 g, 10.66 mmole) in CH_3CN (34 mL) was then added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 3 hr. The resulting mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, diluted with H_2O (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with H_2O (100 mL), dried (anhyd. Na_2SO_4) and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to yield an oil (165). The resulting oil was purified by flash column chromatography (2 x 24 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column with hexane:EtOAc (6:4, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave a solid which was recrystallized from MeOH to afford 1.39 g (72%) of 165: m.p. 119°C ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): d 5.93 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.14-3.92 (m, 4 H, C-3'

- 67 -

and C-4'), 1.83 (s, 3 H, Ac). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{12}H_9N_2Cl_5O_3$: C, 35.45; H, 2.23; N, 6.89. Found: C, 35.57; H, 2.17; N, 16.91.

2,4,5,6,7-Pentachloro-1-(2-benzyloxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole

NaH (0.033 g, 1.52 mmole, 90% oil dispersion) was added to a stirred suspension of 5 2,4,5,6,7-pentachlorobenzimidazole (14) (0.3 g, 1.03 mmole) in dry CH_3CN (35 mL) under a N_2 atmosphere. The solution was stirred until H_2 evolution had ceased and a clear solution was obtained (20 min.). (2-Benzyloxyethoxy)methylchloride (0.31 g, 1.54 mmole) in CH_3CN (10 mL) was then added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 15 hr. The resulting mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, diluted 10 with H_2O (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with H_2O (100 mL), dried (anhyd. Na_2SO_4) and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to yield an oil. The resulting oil was purified by flash column chromatography (2 x 24 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column with hexane:EtOAc (6:4, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions followed by crystallization from hexane:EtOAc afforded 0.18 g (38.4%) of blocked 15 product: m.p. 95°C; 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): d 7.22-7.34 (m, 5H, C_6H_5), 5.93 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.47 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$), 3.70-3.73 (m, 2 H, C-3'), 3.45-3.57 (m, 2 H, C-4'), 1.83 (s, 3 H, Ac). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{17}H_{13}NCl_5O_2$: C, 44.88; H, 2.86; N, 6.16. Found: C, 44.95; H, 2.59; N, 6.05.

2,4,5,6,7-Pentachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole (166)

To a solution of the blocked product (1.2 g, 2.63 mmole) in dry CH_2Cl_2 (25 mL) at 20 -78°C under N_2 atmosphere, BCl_3 (5M solution in CH_2Cl_2 , 18 mL) was added dropwise while maintaining the bath temperature at 78°C. The reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 4 hr, MeOH (18 mL) was added at 0°C and the cold solution was immediately neutralized (pH 7) with NH_4OH . The solution was allowed to warm up to room temperature and then concentrated at 40°C to yield an oil. The resulting mixture was diluted with H_2O 25 (100 mL), extracted with EtOAc (250 mL), washed with H_2O (100 mL), dried (anhyd. Na_2SO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The product thus obtained, was purified by flash column chromatography (2 x 24 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column with hexane:EtOAc (6:4, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions gave a solid which on recrystallization from hexane:EtOAc afforded 0.45 gm (45%) of 166: m.p. 168-170°C; 30 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$): d 5.83 (s, 2H, C-1'), 4.62 (t, 1 H, exchanges with D_2O , OH), 3.54-3.50 (m, 2 H, C-3'), 3.44-3.38 (m, 2 H, C-4'). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{10}H_7N_2Cl_5O_2$: C, 32.92; H, 1.92; N, 7.68. Found: C, 32.58; H, 1.82; N, 7.33.

2-Methylxy-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole (166a) and
2-Amino-4,5,6,7-tetrachloro-1-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)benzimidazole (167)

A mixture of 165 (0.2, 0.49 mmole) and methanolic ammonia (methanol saturated with ammonia at 0°C, 30 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 12 hr in a pressure bottle.

- 5 The resulting mixture was evaporated to dryness and purified by flash column chromatography (2 x 25 cm) (230-400 mesh). Elution of the column $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{MeOH}$ (97:3, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions followed by recrystallization from the mixture of hexane:EtOAc gave 0.02 gm (13.24 %) of 166a: m.p. 139°C; ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 5.44 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.69 (t, 1 H, exchanges with D₂O, OH), 3.86 (s, 3 H, OCH₃), 3.46-3.41 (m, 4 H, C-3' and C-4'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₁H₁₀N₂Cl₄O₂: C, 34.81; H, 3.62; N, 12.16. Found: C, 34.59; H, 2.55; N, 11.79.

- Further elution of the $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{MeOH}$ (90:1, v/v) and evaporation of the appropriate fractions followed by recrystallization from the mixture of DMSO-H₂O gave 0.06 g (39.5 %) of 167: m.p. 268°C; ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.42 (s, 2 H, exchanges with D₂O, NH₂), 5.66 (s, 2 H, C-1'), 4.69 (bs, 1 H, exchanges with D₂O, OH), 3.47 (m, 4 H, C-3' and C-4'). Anal. Calcd. for C₁₀H₉N₃Cl₄O₂: C, 36.62; H, 2.79; N, 7.78. Found: C, 36.61; H, 2.16; N, 7.65.

1-Benzyl-2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (181)

- 2,5,6-Trichlorobenzimidazole (5, 50 mg, 0.0002 moles) was dissolved in 15 ml of CH₃CN, and K₂CO₃ (33 mg, 0.0002 moles) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for one hour, at which time benzyl bromide (0.024 ml, 0.0002 moles) was added. The mixture was then stirred for two days. TLC analysis showed the formation of a new compound with a higher R_f than starting material. The mixture was then concentrated and a liquid-liquid extraction was done using CHCl₃, and H₂O. The CHCl₃ layer was kept, dried with MgSO₄, filtered, and then concentrated. Column chromatography was then performed using 2% MeOH/CHCl₃ to elute the compounds. The fractions were collected and those containing the compound were concentrated. The compound was recrystallized from MeOH, giving 60 mg of 1-benzyl-2,5,6-trichlorobenzimidazole (181) (96.2%). ^1H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.49 ppm (s, 3H), 7.13 (m, 2H), 7.32 (m, 4H), 7.78 (s, 1H). ^{13}C NMR (CDCl₃): δ 43.20 ppm, 106.25, 115.78, 121.62, 122.24, 122.66, 123.50, 124.15, 129.05, 129.16, 135.97, 137.68. GC-MS: m/e 310, 273, 239, 221, 197, 170, 158, 138, 120, 100, 91, 77, 65, 51, 39. m.p: 175-176°C. Elemental Analysis: (C₁₄H₉Cl₃N₂): Calculated: C, 53.85; H, 2.88; N, 8.97. Found: C, 53.92; H, 2.85; N, 8.89. UV λ_{max} nm (ε x 10⁴): (pH 7) 263 (0.080), 290 (0.102), 299 (0.154); (pH 1) 224 (0.412), 258 (0.157), 290 (0.155), 299 (0.166).

2-Amino-1-benzyl-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (182)M thod A(182)

2-Amino-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (4) (1g, 4.95 mmole) was dissolved in acetonitrile (200 ml) and NaOH (198 mg, 4.95 mmole) was added. After stirring for 1 hr at room temperature, benzyl bromide (0.589 ml, 4.95 mmole) was added and the mixture was allowed to stir overnight. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on a silica gel column (3.5 X 5 cm) using 5% MeOH/CHCl₃ to give 1.23 g (85%) of 2-amino-1-benzyl-5,6-dichlorobenzimidazole (182). The compound was then recrystallized from EtOH/H₂O to give a white powder. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 5.28 ppm (s, 2H), 6.95 (s, 2H), 7.16 (d, 2H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 7.31 (m, 4H). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 44.74 ppm, 109.15, 115.37, 119.62, 122.66, 126.82, 127.37, 128.55, 134.10, 136.46, 143.13, 156.91. MS (Electron Impact): m/e 291, 200, 158, 91, 65. MP: 245-246°C. Elemental Analysis: (C₁₄H₁₁Cl₂N₃): Calculated: C, 57.55; H, 3.79; N, 14.38. Found: C, 57.66; H, 3.83; N, 13.98. UV lmax nm (ε x 10⁴): (pH 7) 230 (0.761), 260 (0.324), 302 (0.452); (pH 1) 238 (0.306), 294 (0.383), 299 (0.359); (pH 11) 229 (0.869), 257 (0.316), 301 (0.443).

Method B(182)

Compound 118 was treated with methanolic ammonia for 18 hr, at an elevated temperature, to afford compound 182, after a standard isolation and purification procedure.

D. Antiviral Activity of Compounds

The following test methods were followed in generating the data in Figures 3 through 9.

METHODS(1) Propagation of Cells and Viruses(a) Cells

The routine growth and passage of KB cells, a human epidermoid neoplastic cell line, was performed in monolayer cultures using minimal essential medium (MEM) with either Hanks salts [MEM(H)] or Earle salts ([MEM(E)] supplemented with 10% calf serum or 5 to 10% fetal bovine serum. The sodium bicarbonate concentration was varied to meet the buffering capacity required. BSC-1 (African green monkey kidney) cells were grown and passaged in Dulbecco modified MEM(E) supplemented with 5% tryptose phosphate broth and 5% horse serum. Cultures of human foreskin fibroblasts (HFF) were grown in medium consisting of MEM(E) with 10% fetal bovine serum.

Cells were passaged at 1:2 to 1:10 dilutions according to conventional procedures by using 0.05% trypsin plus 0.02% EDTA in a HEPES buffered salt solution. HFF cells were passaged only at 1:2 dilutions.

(b) Viruses

The S-148 strain of HSV-1 was used in most experiments and was provided by Dr. T.W. Schafer of Schering Corporation. The HF strain of HSV-1 was used in selected experiments and was obtained from Dr. G.H. Cohen, University of Pennsylvania. The 5 Towne strain, plaque-purified isolate P_o, of HCMV was a gift of Dr. Mark Stinski, University of Iowa.

High titer HSV-1 stocks were prepared as follows: Nearly confluent monolayer cultures of KB cells were grown in 32 oz. glass bottles containing MEM(E) buffered with 25 mM HEPES and supplemented with 5% fetal bovine serum and 0.127 g/liter L-arginine 10 (VGM, virus growth medium). The cultures were infected at a low input multiplicity to reduce the formation of defective virus. After cell cytopathology reached "three to four plus", the cells were harvested by vigorous shaking, and concentrated by centrifugation (800 x g for 5 min.). The resulting virus pools were stored at -76°C until retrieved for use in experiments.

15 Stock HCMV was prepared by infecting HFF cells at a multiplicity of infection (m.o.i.) of less than 0.01 plaque-forming units (p.f.u.) per cell. Cell growth medium was changed every four days until cytopathology was evident in all cells (approximately 21 days). Supernatant fluids were retained as the virus stock. Four days later, the remaining cells were disrupted by three cycles of freeze-thawing and the cell plus medium held as an 20 additional source of virus. Storage was in liquid nitrogen.

HSV-1 was titrated using monolayer cultures of BSC-1 cells. Cells were planted at 3×10^5 cells/well using 6-well cluster dishes. MEM(E) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum was employed as medium. After 22-24 h, cells were 90% confluent and were inoculated in triplicate using at least three ten-fold dilutions with 0.2 ml of the virus 25 suspension to be assayed and incubated in a humidified 4% CO₂-90% air atmosphere for one hour to permit viral adsorption. Following virus adsorption, the cell sheet was overlayed with 5 ml of MEM(E) with 5% serum plus 0.5% methocel (4000 CPS) and incubated an additional two to three days. Cells were fixed and stained with 0.1% crystal violet in 20% methanol and macroscopic plaques enumerated.

30 HCMV was titrated in 24-well cluster dishes which were planted to contain 5×10^4 HFF cells/well, grown as described above. When the cells were 70 to 80% confluent, 0.2 ml of the virus suspension was added per well and adsorbed as described above. At least three ten-fold dilutions of each preparation were used. Following virus adsorption, the cell sheets were overlayed with 0.5% methocel (4000 CPS) in maintenance medium [MEM(E) 35 with 1.1 g/liter NaHCO₃, 100 units/ml penicillin G, 100 µg/ml streptomycin, and 5% fetal

bovine serum]. The cultures were incubated in a humidified atmosphere of 4% CO₂-96% air. Viral foci were visible 5 to 7 days after infection using at least 10-fold magnification. Cells were fixed and stained by a 10-minute exposure to a 0.1% solution of crystal violet in 20% methanol 7 to 12 days after infection. Microscopic foci were enumerated at 20-fold magnification using a Nikon Profile Projector.

5 (2) Assays for Antiviral Activity

(a) HSV-1

Plaque reduction experiments with HSV-1 were performed using monolayer cultures of BSC-1 cells. The assay was performed exactly as described above except that the 0.2 ml virus suspension contained approximately 100 p.f.u. of HSV-1. Compounds to be tested were dissolved in the overlay medium at concentrations usually ranging from 0.1 to 100 µM in half-or-one logarithm₁₀ dilutions. Titer reduction assays were performed by planting KB cells in 25 cm² plastic tissue culture flasks 10 to 24 hr prior to infection. At the onset of experiments, logarithmically growing replicate monolayer cultures were 60 to 80% confluent and contained 2.5 to 4.5 x 10⁶ cells/flask. Medium was decanted and the cultures were infected with 2 to 10 p.f.u. of HSV-1 per cell. Virus was contained in 1.0 ml of VGM supplemented with 5% fetal bovine serum. After a 1 h adsorption period at 37°C, the cell sheet was rinsed twice with 2 ml of VGM without serum to remove unadsorbed virus and 5 ml of VGM containing drugs at three to five selected concentrations added in duplicate. Following an 18-to 20-hr incubation at 37°C, infected monolayers were treated with EDTA-trypsin to suspend the cells; aliquots were removed, subjected to three cycles of freezing and thawing, and stored at -76°C for subsequent virus assay. Virus was titrated on BSC-1 cells as described above.

ELISA techniques according to standard procedures were also used to determine activity against HSV-1. Drug effects were calculated as a percentage of the reduction in virus titers in the presence of each drug concentration compared to the titer obtained in the absence of drug. Acyclovir was used as a positive control in all experiments.

(b) HCMV

The effect of compounds of the replication of HCMV has been measured using both a plaque (focus) reduction assay and a titer (yield) reduction assay. For the former, HFF cells in 24-well culture dishes were infected with approximately 50 p.f.u. of HCMV per well using the procedures detailed above. Compounds dissolved in growth medium were added in three to six selected concentrations to triplicate wells following virus adsorption. Following incubation at 37°C for 7 to 10 days, cell sheets were fixed, stained and microscopic plaques were enumerated as described above. Drug effects were calculated

- 72 -

as a percentage of reduction in number of foci in the presence of each drug concentration compared to the number observed in the absence of drug. DHPG (ganciclovir) was used as a positive control in all experiments.

For titer reduction assays, HFF cells were planted as described above in 24-well cluster dishes or in 25 cm² flasks. When monolayers were approximately 70% confluent, HCMV was added at a m.o.i. of 0.5 p.f.u. per cell and adsorbed as detailed above. Compounds dissolved in growth medium were added in one or one-half-logarithm₁₀ dilutions and incubation continued at 37°C. After 7 to 10 days of incubation, culture dishes of flasks were frozen at 76°C. For titer determination, cells were thawed and then subjected to two more cycles of freezing and thawing at 37°C. Serial, one-logarithm₁₀ dilutions of the final suspension were prepared and inoculated onto new cultures of HFF cells. Titer determination was as detailed above in part (b).

(3) Cytotoxicity Assays

15 (a) Protocol for Determining Effects of Compounds on DNA, RNA and Protein Synthesis

KB or HFF cells were planted using a Costar Transplate-96 (Costar, Cambridge, Massachusetts) in Costar 96-well cluster dishes at a concentration of 10,000 to 12,000 cells per well. Cells were suspended in 200 µl of medium [MEM(H) plus 0.7 g/liter NaHCO₃ supplemented with 10% calf serum] per well. After incubation of 16 to 24 hours 20 at 37°C in a humidified atmosphere of 4% CO₂ in air, 150 µl of medium was removed per well. One-hundred µl of medium with or without compounds in twice their final concentrations was added to each well using a Titertek Multichannel Pipette. Final concentrations of compounds ranged from 0.1 to 320 µl of medium containing radioactive precursors also was added to each well to give a final concentration to 1 to 3 µCi/ml of 25 labeled precursor. [³H]Thd was diluted with unlabeled dThd to give a final concentration of 3 to 6 µM.

Following addition of drugs and labeled precursors, plates were incubated as described above for an additional 18 to 24 hr. Logarithmic cell growth occurred during this time with continual uptake of labeled precursors. At the end of the incubation period, cells 30 were individually harvested from each well using a Skatron Cell harvester (Skatron, Inc., Sterling, Virginia). Cultures for individual wells were harvested onto filter paper and washed free of unincorporated label with nine sequential washes with 5% trichloroacetic acid, nine washes with water, and nine with ethanol using the Skatron unit. Filters were dried, circles from individual cultures were punched from the filter mat and placed into 35 mini-vials. Liquid scintillation solution was added, and radioactivity determined in a Beckman model LS8100 Liquid scintillation spectrometer. All samples were counted for

2.0 min each, with three rounds of counting. Counts per minute were determined following the application of statistical methods to eliminate count rates which fell outside distribution limits defined by Chauvenet's rejection criterion.

All analyses were performed in triplicate. That is, three culture wells were used per time point, radioactive precursor, and drug concentration in all experiments. Results from triplicate assays were converted to percent of control and plotted as log dose-response curves from which 50% inhibitor (I_{50}) concentrations were interpolated. Three concentrations of vidarabine were included on all plates as a positive control.

(b) Visual Scoring

Cytotoxicity produced in HFF and BSC-1 cells was estimated by visual scoring of cells not affected by virus infection in the HCMV and HSV-1 plaque reduction assays. Cytopathology was estimated at 35- and 60-fold magnification and scored on a zero to four plus basis. Wells were scored on the day of staining.

(4) Cell Growth Rates

Population doubling times and cell viability were measured in uninfected HFF and/or KB cells. Cells were planted in replicate 6-well plastic tissue culture dishes or in 25 cm² flasks as described above in part 1. Following an incubation period during which cells attached to the substrate, medium was decanted, the cell sheet rinsed once with HBS, and fresh medium added. The medium consisted of MEM(E) with 1.1g NaHCO₃/liter and 10% fetal bovine or calf serum plus appropriate log or half-log concentrations of drug. After additional periods of incubation from 1 to 72 hours at 37°C, cells were harvested by means of 0.05% trypsin plus 0.02% EDTA in a HEPES-buffered salt solution. Cells were enumerated using either a Coulter counter or a hemocytometer and viability determining using trypan blue dye exclusion.

(5) Plating Efficiency

A plating efficiency assay was used to confirm and extend results described above. Briefly, KB cells were suspended in growth medium and an aliquot containing 1000 cells was added to a 140 x 25 mm petri dish. Growth medium (40 ml) containing selected concentrations of test compounds was added and the cultures incubated in a humidified atmosphere of 4% CO₂-96% air, 37°C for 14 days. Medium then was decanted and colonies fixed with methanol and stained with 0.1% crystal violet in 20% methanol. Macroscopic colonies greater than 1 mm in diameter were enumerated. Drug effects were calculated as a percentage of reduction in number of colonies formed in the presence of each drug concentration compared to the number of colonies formed in the absence of

drugs. Dose-response curves were generated and I_{50} concentrations for inhibition of plating/colony formation were calculated.

(6) Data Analysis

Dose-response relationships were used to compare drug effects. These were constructed by linearly regressing the percent inhibition of parameters derived in the preceding sections against log drug concentrations. The 50 inhibitory (I_{50}) concentrations were calculated from the regression lines using the methods described by Goldstein. See Goldstein, A., Biostatistics: An Introductory Text, MacMillan, New York, pp. 156-161 (1964). The three I_{50} concentrations for inhibition of DNA, RNA and protein synthesis were averaged and were reported in the tables. Along with the I_{50} concentrations are compared to I_{50} concentrations for inhibition for HCMV or HSV-1 replication. Compounds for which the ratio of cytotoxicity I_{50} concentrations to antiviral I_{50} concentrations (*in vitro* therapeutic index) were greater than 10, were considered for further study.

RESULTS

15 (1) Antiviral Activity and Cytotoxicity of Benzimidazoles

Figure 3 summarizes test results from antiviral and cytotoxicity evaluation of the benzimidazoles. These halogen-substituted compounds were active against HCMV, with a halogen at R_5 being essential for antiviral activity and low cytotoxicity. For example, compounds 45 and 52 were active against HCMV in the sub- or low micromolar range and did not produce cytotoxicity in uninfected cells at concentrations up to 100 μ M. This potent and selective antiviral activity against HCMV is in sharp contrast to the low, apparent activity against this virus of the dichloro compound commonly referred to as DRB which compound was initially described by Tamm (I. Tamm, *Science* 120:847-848, 1954). The R_2 and R_3 positions in this compound are substituted by Cl but the R_5 position is unsubstituted. Although this compound appears to have weak activity against HCMV and HSV-1 (Figure 3), this activity was observed only at concentrations which produced cytotoxicity in uninfected cells (Figures 3 and 8). Thus in contrast to compounds disclosed herein, the activity of DRB against HCMV is not actual antiviral activity but rather is a manifestation of cytotoxicity.

30 Other compounds showing good or better activity than compound 45 against HCMV and low cytotoxicity are compounds 52, 85, 95, 99 and compound 111 (the deoxyribosyl analog of compound 45). Other compounds with activity include compounds 61, 81, 83a, and 107. All compounds except 81, 95, and 99 also had activity against HSV-1.

Figure 9 summarizes test results from antiviral and cytotoxicity evaluation of benzimidazoles and related compounds. These compounds are active against HCMV and

- 75 -

some also are active against HSV-1. For example, compounds 57, 65, 65a, 87, 90, 103, 113, 134, 155, 156, 182, 92, 81 and 54 were active against HCMV in the low-micromolar range in either plaque or yield reduction assays. Although some compounds also showed cytotoxic effects in some assays, activity against HCMV was separated from cytotoxicity.

- 5 All other compounds presented in Figure 9 also were active against HCMV but to a lesser extent.

In addition to activity against HCMV, compounds 44, 65a, 113, 134, 182, 54, 19, 12c, 13 and 26 also are active against HSV-1.

(2) Detailed Studies with Compound 45

10 Because of the potent activity of compound 45 against HCMV and its very low cytotoxicity, this compound has been studied more extensively. Data in Figure 8 provide evidence that compound 45 is highly specific for human cytomegalovirus. The data show the compound is highly active against this virus but is less active against herpes simplex type 1, herpes simplex type 2, varicella-zoster virus and mouse cytomegalovirus.

15 Because of this unique potent activity against HCMV, compound 45 was compared to the known anti-HCMV agent ganciclovir as well as to DRB. Figure 5 shows that compound 45 is at least as effective as ganciclovir in producing multiple 10-fold reductions in virus titer. Thus, at a concentration of 32 μ M compound 45 produced a 100,000-fold reduction in the replication of HCMV. The lack of cytotoxicity of compound 45 in this
20 antiviral activity range is shown in Figure 6. Data in this figure establish that at 32 to 100 μ M compound 45 had little or no effect on the growth of uninfected KB cells. Figure 7 shows that the inhibitory effects produced by a concentration as high as 320 μ M could be reversed by simple removal of the drug from uninfected cells. In contrast Figure 8 shows the effects of the known compound DRB were fully inhibitory to uninfected cells at 100 μ M
25 and these effects could not be reversed by removal of the drug from culture, thereby establishing the cytotoxicity of this compound.

The lack of cytotoxicity of compound 45 was further established by plating efficiency experiments. In these experiments, which measure both the ability of cells to grow and to attach to a substrate, compound 45 had no effect at 100 μ M.

30 (3) Additional Studies With Compounds 45 and 52

Because of the potent activity of compounds 45 and 52 against HCMV and their very low cytotoxicity, these compounds were studied further. Compound 52 also was compared to the known anti-HCMV agent ganciclovir in yield reduction assays. Compound 52 is more effective than ganciclovir in producing multiple 10-fold reductions
35 in virus titer. Thus, at a concentration of 3.2 μ M, compound 52 produced nearly a

100,000-fold reduction in the replication of HCMV. In contrast, a 32 μ M concentration of ganciclovir was needed to give a similar reduction in HCMV titer. Separate experiments (Figure 3) established a lack of cytotoxicity of compound 52 in its antiviral activity range. Data in this figure show that up to 100 μ M compound 52 had little or no effect on the 5 growth of uninfected KB cells.

The lack of toxicity of compounds 45 and 52 in their antiviral dose range was further established by examining the effect of both compounds on human bone marrow progenitor cells. Both compounds are at least six-fold less toxic to granulocyte/macrophage progenitor cells than is ganciclovir. Compound 45 is at least 10 four-fold less toxic to erythroid progenitor cells than is ganciclovir, compound 52 is nearly three-fold less toxic. Thus, both compounds are more active against HCMV than is ganciclovir and both are less toxic to human cells.

(4) Drug Combination and Synergy

Compounds of the invention, such as compounds 45 and 52, provide additional 15 advantages when used in combination with other antiviral drugs. For example, combination of compound 45 with the known antiviral drug ganciclovir results in greater activity (*i.e.* synergy) against human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) than the use of either agent alone when used at concentrations (approximately 0.1 to 10 μ M) most likely achieved *in vivo* by the administration of therapeutic amounts of each drug. At higher concentrations 20 (approximately 3 to 10 μ M) compound 45 also is synergistic against HCMV when used with another known antiviral drug, acyclovir. Likewise the combination of compound 52 with ganciclovir or acyclovir results in synergistic activity against HCMV.

Compounds of the invention, such as 45 and 52, could thus be used to treat HCMV infections in AIDS patients already receiving the antiviral drug zidovudine (AZT). 25 Combination of either compound 45 or 52 with AZT provides the advantage of less toxicity over the combination of ganciclovir with AZT. The combination of compound 45 or 52 with AZT produces less cytotoxicity (*i.e.* antagonism) in cultured human cells than either agent used alone. In contrast, combination of ganciclovir with AZT produces greater cytotoxicity in human cells than the use of either of these drugs alone.

30 (5) Activity of Ester Prodrugs

Prodrugs of polysubstituted benzimidazoles can be useful for oral administration. For example, ester prodrugs of compounds 45 (compounds 42 and 42a) and 52 (compounds 52a and 52b), respectively, have been prepared and are active against HCMV.

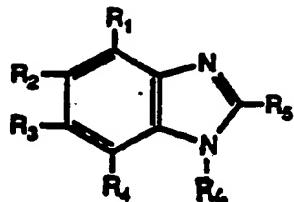
The foregoing discussion discloses and describes merely exemplary embodiments of 35 the present invention. One skilled in the art will readily recognize from such discussion,

- 77 -

and from the accompanying drawings and claims, that various changes, modifications and variations can be made therein without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined in the following claims. Any discrepancy in compound nomenclature in the specification and claims herein should be resolved in deference to the structures and
5 constituents set forth in the tables of Figures 1 and 2.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following formula and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and formulations thereof:



where

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

10 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

30 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

10 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is OCH₃ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

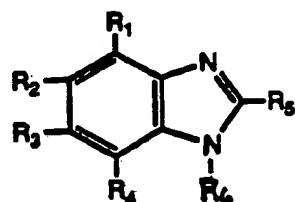
and operative combinations thereof.

30 2. The method of Claim 1 wherein the compound is a compound selected from the group consisting of compounds 45, 52, 61, 81, 83a, 85, 95, 99, 107, 111, 112, 7, 19, 26, 32, 54, 57, 65, 65a, 67, 81b, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 103, 113, 134, 155, 156, 166a, 167, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a, as defined in Claim 1, and operative combinations thereof.

3. The method of Claim 2 wherein the compound is a compound selected from the group consisting of compounds 45, 52, 85, 111, 54, 65, 65a, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 156, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a and operative combinations thereof.
4. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 61.
5. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 81.
6. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 83a.
7. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 95.
8. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 99.
9. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 107.
10. The method of Claim 2 wherein the selected compound is compound 112.
11. The method of Claim 2 wherein the treatment is for a virus of the herpes family.
12. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 45.
13. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 52.
14. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 85.
15. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 111.
16. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 54.
17. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 65.
18. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 65a.

19. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 81c.
20. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 87.
21. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 90.
22. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 92.
- 5 23. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 156.
24. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 182.
25. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 42a.
26. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 51b.
27. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 42.
- 10 28. The method of Claim 3 wherein the selected compound is compound 52a.
29. The method of Claim 3 wherein the treatment is for a virus of the herpes family.
30. The method of Claim 29 wherein the virus is a virus selected from the group consisting of human cytomegalovirus and herpes simplex virus.
- 15 31. The method of Claim 30 wherein the virus is human cytomegalovirus.
32. The method of Claim 3 wherein the composition further comprises an antiviral agent outside the group.

33. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a compound selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following formula and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and formulations thereof:



where

- 5 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);
 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);
 10 R_1 is H, R_2 is NO_2 , R_3 is NO_2 , R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);
 15 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is H, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);
 20 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is I and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);
 25 R_1 is Br, R_2 is Br, R_3 is H, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);
 30 R_1 is H, R_2 is Br, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);
 35 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);
 40 R_1 is H, R_2 is I, R_3 is I, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);
 45 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂ C₆H₅ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

5 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl
10 (denoted compound 113 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is OCH₃ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl
20 (denoted compound 166a in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

and operative combinations thereof.

- 86 -

34. The composition of Claim 33 wherein the compound is a compound selected from the group of compounds consisting of compounds 45, 52, 61, 81, 83a, 85, 85, 89, 107, 111, 112, 7, 19, 26, 32, 54, 57, 65, 65a, 67, 81b, 81, 87, 90, 92, 103, 113, 134, 155, 156, 166a, 167, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a, as defined in Claim 33, and operative combinations thereof.

35. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the compound is a compound selected from the group of compounds consisting of compounds 45, 52, 85, 111, 54, 65, 65a, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 156, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a and operative combinations thereof.

36. The composition of Claim 34 further comprising an antiviral agent outside
10 the group.

37. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 45.

38. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 52.

39. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 85.

40. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 111.

15 41. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 54.

42. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 65.

43. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 65a.

44. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 81c.

45. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 87.

20 46. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 90.

47. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 92.

48. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 156.

49. The composition of Claim 34 wherein the selected compound is 182.

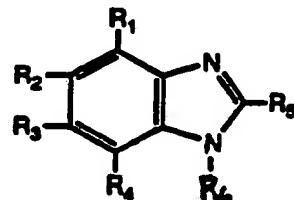
50. The composition of Claim 36 wherein the antiviral agent outside the group comprises AZT.

51. The composition of Claim 36 wherein the antiviral agent outside the group comprises ganciclovir.

52. The composition of Claim 36 wherein the selected compound is selected from the group consisting of compounds 45 and 52 and the composition.

53. The composition of Claim 52 wherein the antiviral agent outside the group comprises AZT.

54. An antiviral compound selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following general formula and pharmaceutically acceptable formulations and salts thereof:



wherein

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);

20 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

25 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β -D-rib furanosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

10 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

20 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is OCH₃ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

25 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

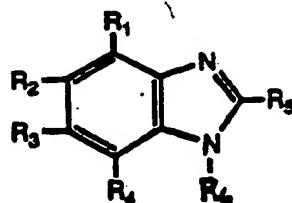
R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);
and operative combinations thereof.

55. The compound of Claim 54 wherein the compound is a compound selected
5 from the group of compounds consisting of compounds 52, 61, 81, 83a, 85, 95, 99, 107,
111, 112, 7, 19, 26, 32, 57, 65, 65a, 67, 81b, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 103, 113, 134, 155, 156,
166a, 167, 182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a, as defined in Claim 54, and operative combinations
thereof.

56. The compound of Claim 55 wherein the compound is selected from the
10 group of compounds consisting of compounds 52, 85, 111, 65, 65a, 81c, 87, 90, 92, 156,
182, 42a, 52b, 42, 52a and operative combinations thereof.

57. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 52.
58. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 85.
59. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 111.
- 15 60. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 65.
61. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 65a.
62. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 81c.
63. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 87.
64. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 90.
- 20 65. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 92.
66. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 156.
67. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 182.

68. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 42a.
69. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 52b.
70. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 42.
71. A compound of Claim 56 wherein the compound is compound 52a.
- 5 72. The use of a compound in the manufacturing of a medicament wherein the compound comprises a compound selected from the group consisting of compounds having the following formula and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and formulations thereof:



- R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted 10 compound 45 in the text);
- R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);
- R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);
- 15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);
- R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);
- R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted 20 compound 85 in the text);
- R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);
- R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuran syl (denoted compound 107 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

30 R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

35 R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

5 R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

10 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

15 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

20 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is OCH₃ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

25 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is Cl, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl (denoted compound 182 in the text);

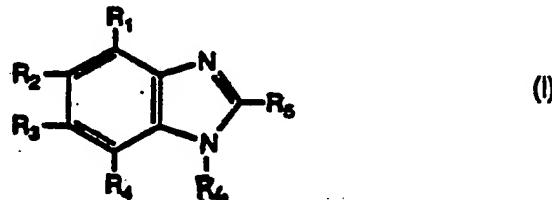
30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-rib furanosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);
and perative combinations thereof.

73. A process for preparing a polysubstituted benzimidazole of the following
5 formula:



wherein

- R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 45 in the text);
- 10 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52 in the text);
R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 61 in the text);
- 15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81 in the text);
R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is I and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 83a in the text);
- 20 R₁ is Br, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 85 in the text);
R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 95 in the text);
- 25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 99 in the text);
R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 107 in the text);
- 30 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 111 in the text);
R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is 2'-deoxy-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 112 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Br and R₆ is H (denoted compound 7 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 12c in the text);

5 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 13 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is NO₂, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 19 in the text);

10 R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is NO₂, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 26 in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 32 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is I, R₃ is I, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41 in the text);

15 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is H (denoted compound 41c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is NH₂ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 44 in the text);

20 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is SCH₂C₆H₅ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 54 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is Br, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 57 in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is F, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65 in the text);

25 R₁ is H, R₂ is Cl, R₃ is F, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 65a in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 67 in the text);

30 R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is Cl, R₄ is H, R₅ is CF₃ and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81b in the text);

R₁ is Cl, R₂ is H, R₃ is CF₃, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 81c in the text);

R₁ is H, R₂ is Br, R₃ is H, R₄ is H, R₅ is Cl and R₆ is β-D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 87 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is H, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 90 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 92 in the text);

5 R_1 is Br, R_2 is Br, R_3 is Br, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 103 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is NH_2 and R_6 is 2'-deoxy- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 113 in the text);

10 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is β -D-arabinofuranosyl (denoted compound 134 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 155 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH_2 and R_6 is (1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl (denoted compound 156 in the text);

15 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166 in the text);

R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is OCH_3 and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 166a in the text);

20 R_1 is Cl, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is Cl, R_5 is NH_2 and R_6 is 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl (denoted compound 167 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42a in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 5-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52b in the text);

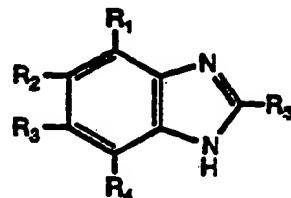
25 R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Cl and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 42 in the text);

R_1 is H, R_2 is Cl, R_3 is Cl, R_4 is H, R_5 is Br and R_6 is 2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl (denoted compound 52a in the text);

 which comprises reacting a compound of the following formula:

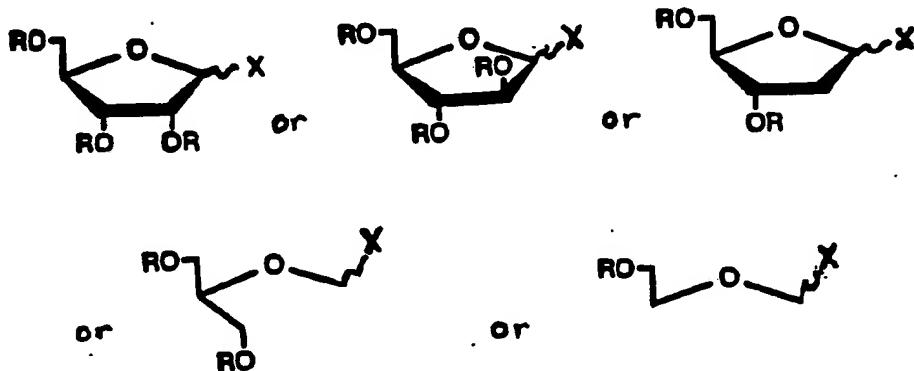
30

(II)



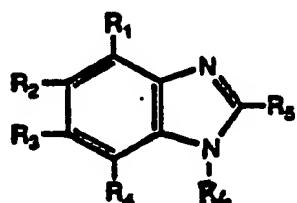
- 97 -

- wherein R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, and R₅ are defined as above, with a protected compound of formula R₆^aX, shown below, in which R₆^a represents a protected carbohydrate moiety and X represents a leaving group, and subsequently removing the protecting group from the moiety to form the desired compound, wherein the compound of formula R₆^aX is represented by the formula:
- 5

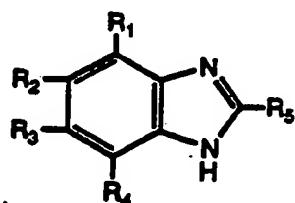


wherein X represents a leaving group and R represents a hydroxy protecting group.

74. A process for preparing a polysubstituted benzimidazole of the following formula:



- 10 wherein R₁ is H, R₂, R₃ is Cl, R₅ is Cl or NH₂ and R₆ is benzyl, which comprises reacting a compound of the following formula:

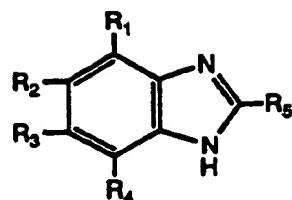


with R'~X, wherein R' is aralkyl.

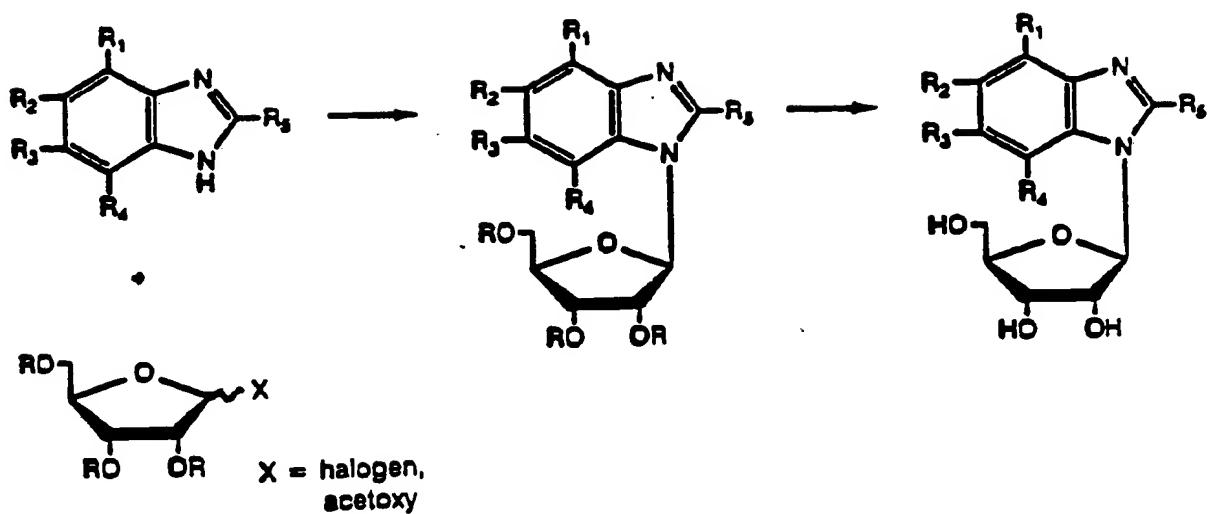
- 98 -

75. A compound of the structure of compound 52.
76. A compound of the structure of compound 85.
77. A compound of the structure of compound 95.
78. A compound of the structure of compound 182.
- 5 79. A compound of the structure of compound 42.
80. A compound of the structure of compound 42a.
81. A compound of the structure of compound 52a.
82. A compound of the structure of compound 52b.
83. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier
10 and a compound of the structure of compound 45 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
or formulation thereof.
84. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier
and a compound of the structure of compound 52 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
or formulation thereof.
- 15 85. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier
and a compound of the structure of compound 85 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
or formulation thereof.
86. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier
and a compound of the structure of compound 95 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
20 or formulation thereof.
87. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier
and a compound of the structure of compound 182 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
or formulation thereof.

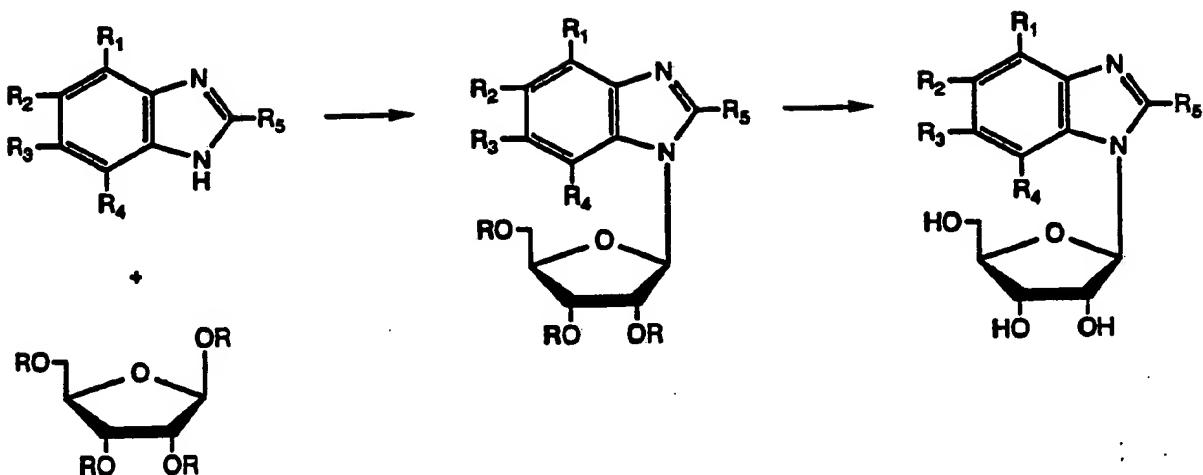
88. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a compound of the structure of compound 42 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
89. An antiviral composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a compound of the structure of compound 42a or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
90. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 45 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
- 10 91. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 52 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
- 15 92. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 85 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
93. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 95 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
- 20 94. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 182 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
95. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 42 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.
- 25 96. A method of antiviral treatment comprising the step of administering to the viral host a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the structure of compound 42a or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or formulation thereof.

Figure 1.

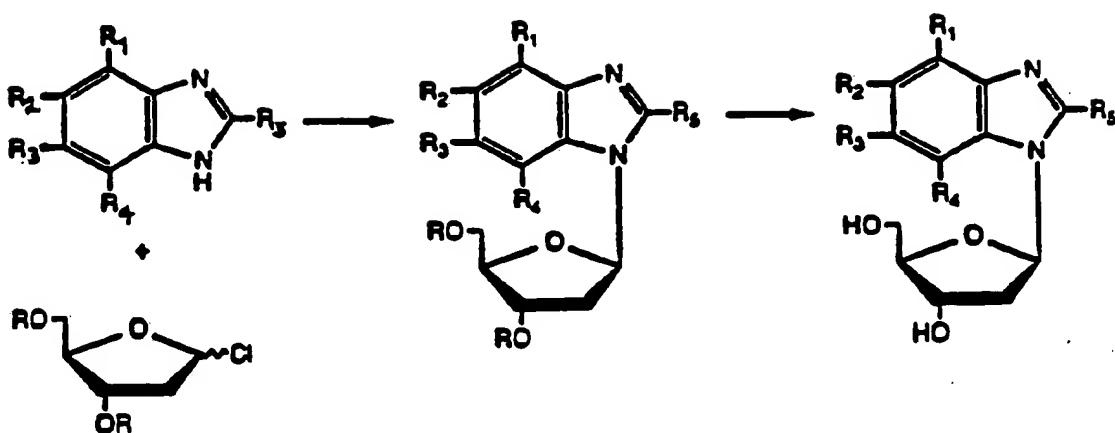
Compound #	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
11	H	F	F	H	NH ₂
12	H	F	F	H	Cl
12b	H	Cl	F	H	NH ₂
12c	H	Cl	F	H	Cl
13	Cl	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
13b	Cl	Cl	Cl	H	NH ₂
17	H	Br	Br	H	Cl
19	H	NO ₂	H	H	Cl
20	Br	Br	Br	H	Cl
25	H	NH ₂	NO ₂	H	Cl
26	H	I	NO ₂	H	Cl
26a	H	I	NH ₂	H	NH ₂
34	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
35	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
41	H	I	I	H	Cl
41b	Cl	H	CF ₃	H	NH ₂
41c	Cl	H	CF ₃	H	Cl

Figure 1a.

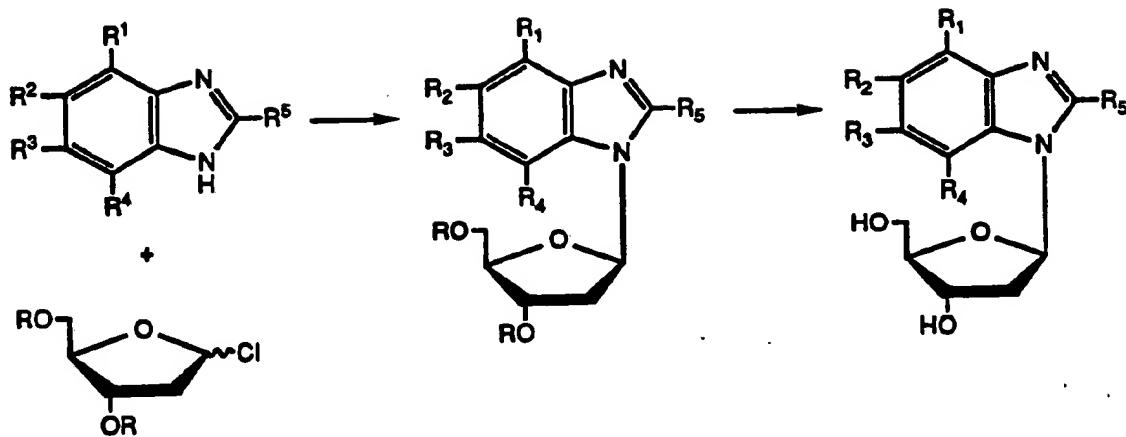
Compound #	R	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
45	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
52	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Br
60	Ac	H	NO ₂	NO ₂	H	Cl
61	H	H	NO ₂	NO ₂	H	Cl
80	Ac	Cl	H	Cl	H	Cl
81	H	Cl	H	Cl	H	Cl
83a	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	I
84	Ac	Br	Br	H	H	Cl
85	H	Br	Br	H	H	Cl
95	H	H	Br	Cl	H	Cl
99	H	H	Cl	Br	H	Cl
107	H	H	I	I	H	Cl

Figure 1b.

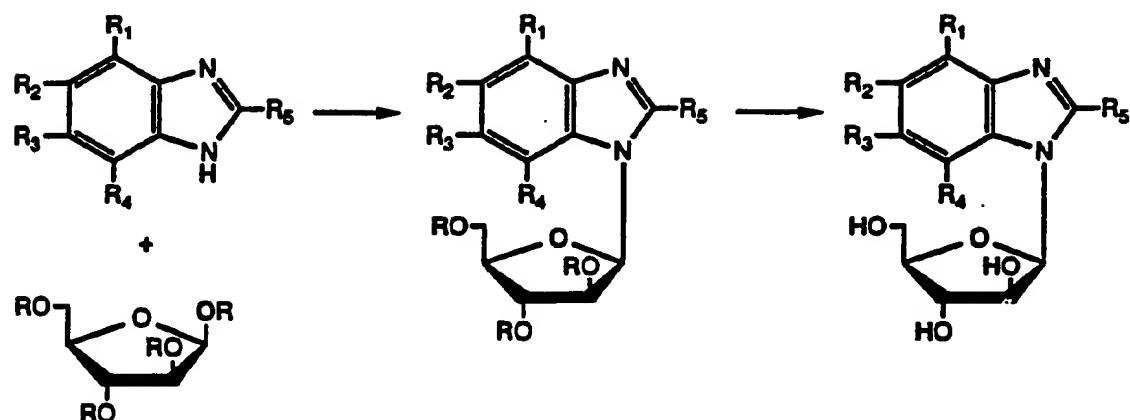
Compound #	R	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
42	Ac	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
42a	Ac(5')	H	Cl	Cl	H	NH ₂
43	Ac	H	Cl	Cl	H	NH ₂
44	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Br
52a	Ac	H	Cl	Cl	H	Br
52b	Ac(5')	H	Cl	Cl	H	SH
53	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	SCH ₂ C ₆ H ₅
54	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
56	Ac	H	Br	Br	H	Cl
57	H	H	Br	Br	H	Cl
64	Ac	H	F	F	H	Cl
65	H	H	F	F	H	Cl
65a	H	H	Cl(F)	Cl(F)	H	Cl
66	Ac	H	H	H	H	Cl
67	H	H	H	H	H	Cl
72	Ac	H	H	H	H	Cl
73	H	H	H	H	H	Cl
74	Ac	H	NO ₂	NO ₂	H	Cl
75	Ac	H	H	NO ₂	H	Cl
76	Ac	H	H	H	H	Cl
77	Ac	H	H	H	H	Cl
78	H	H	H	H	H	Cl
79	Ac	H	H	H	H	Cl
81a	Ac	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
81b	H	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
81c	Ac	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
86	Ac	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
87	H	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
89	Ac	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
90	H	Bn	H	H	H	CF ₃
91a	Bn	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
92	Ac	H	H	H	H	CF ₃
102	H	Ac	H	H	H	CF ₃
103	Ac	H	Br	Br	H	CF ₃

Figure 2.

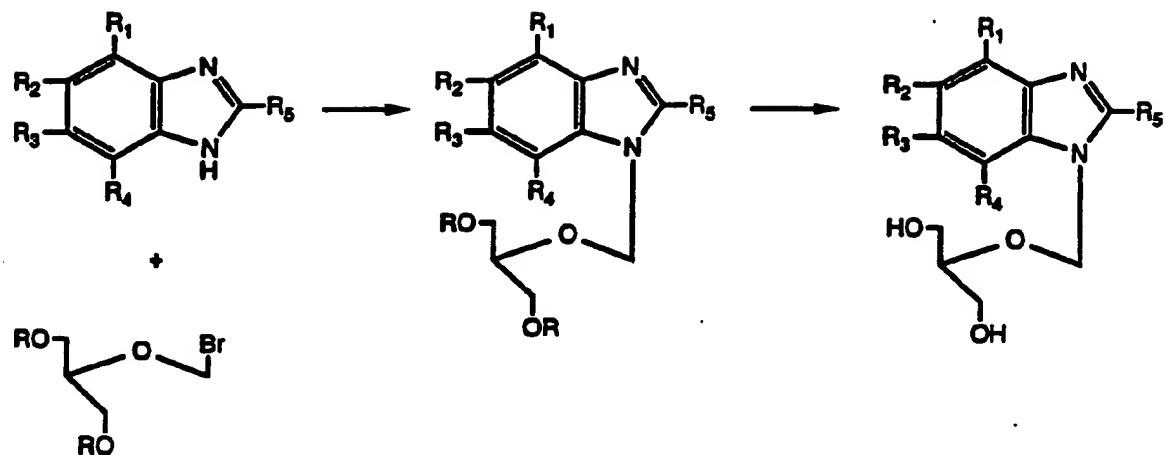
Compound #	R	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
110	p-toloyl	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
111	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
112	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Br

Figure 2a.

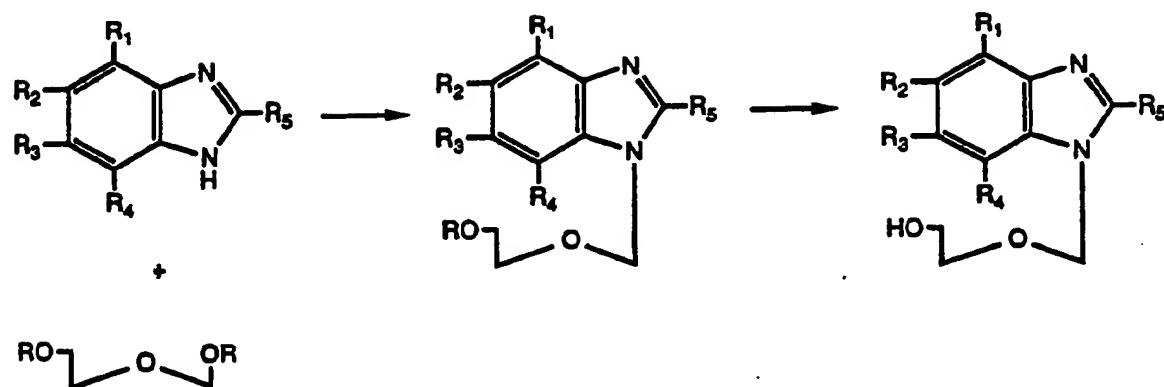
Compound #	R	R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁵
110a	p-toloyl	H	Cl	Cl	H	N ₃
110b	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	N ₃
113	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	NH ₂

Figure 2b.

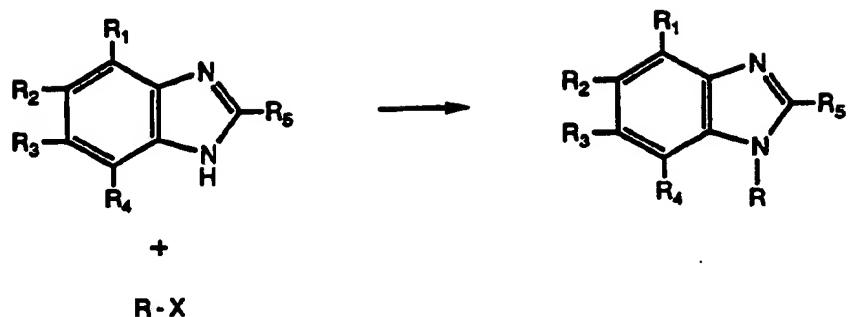
Compound #	R	R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁵
133	Bn	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
134	H	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl

Figure 2c.

Compound #	R	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
154	Bn	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl
155	H	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl
156	H	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	NH ₂
157a	H	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	OCH ₃

Figure 2d.

Compound #	R	R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁵
165	Ac	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl
166	H	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl
166a	H	Cl	Cl	Cl	Cl	OCH ₃
167	H	Cl	Cl	Cl		NH ₂

Figure 2e.

Compound #	R	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅
181	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅	H	Cl	Cl	H	Cl
182	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅	H	Cl	Cl	H	NH ₂

Figure 3.**Antiviral Activity and Cytotoxicity**

Compound Number ^a	<u>50% Inhibitory Concentration</u>					
	<u>Antiviral Activity Against:</u>			<u>Cytotoxicity</u>		
	<u>HCMV</u>	<u>HSV-1</u>	<u>In Cell Line:</u>	<u>HFF^c</u>	<u>BSC^c</u>	<u>KB^d</u>
45	2.8 ^e	1.4 ^e	151 ^e	238 ^e	>100	175 ^e
52	2.5 ^e	0.3 ^e	99 ^e	100 ^e	>100	
61	19 ^e	—	27 ^e	32 ^e		9
81	11	2.0	>100	32		>100
83a	30 ^e	26 ^e	21 ^e	>100 ^e		23
85	5.7 ^e	2.5 ^e	55	75 ^e		109 ^e
95	6.0 ^e	1.5 ^e	>100 ^e	100 ^e		156 ^e
99	7.0 ^e	2.8 ^e	>100 ^e	100 ^e		139 ^e
107	1.7 ^e	2.0	50	10 ^e		19
111	20 ^e	12	41	>320 ^e		53
112	35 ^e	6	—	32 ^e		171 ^e
DRB ^f	42 ^e	19 ^e	30 ^e	24 ^e		36 ^e

^a Number for chemical structure presented in text.^b 50% inhibitory concentration (I_{50}) presented.^c Visual cytotoxicity scored on HFF or BSC-1 cells at time of HCMV or HSV-1 plaque enumeration.^d Average percent inhibition of DNA, RNA and protein synthesis or cell growth determined in KB cells as described in the text.^e Average of two to eight replicate experiments.^f Initially described by I. Tamm; *Science* 120:847-848, 1954.

Figure 4.**Effect of Compound 45 on the Replication of Herpes Viruses**

		<u>50% Inhibitory Concentration, μM</u>	
Virus	Cell Line	Virus	Cytotoxicity ^a
HSV-1	Human Foreskin Fibroblasts	>57	-140
	Rabbit Kidney	>284	>284
	Mouse Embryo Fibroblasts	28	-140
HSV-2	Human Foreskin Fibroblasts	>57	-140
	Rabbit Kidney	>284	>284
	Mouse Embryo Fibroblasts	14	-140
VZV	Human Foreskin Fibroblasts	94	--
MCMV	Mouse Embryo Fibroblasts	57	-140
HCMV	Human Foreskin Fibroblasts	1.4	>>28

^a Visual cytotoxicity in cell line used to propagate virus.

Figure 5. HCMV Titer Reduction by Benzimidazole Nucleosides and Ganciclovir

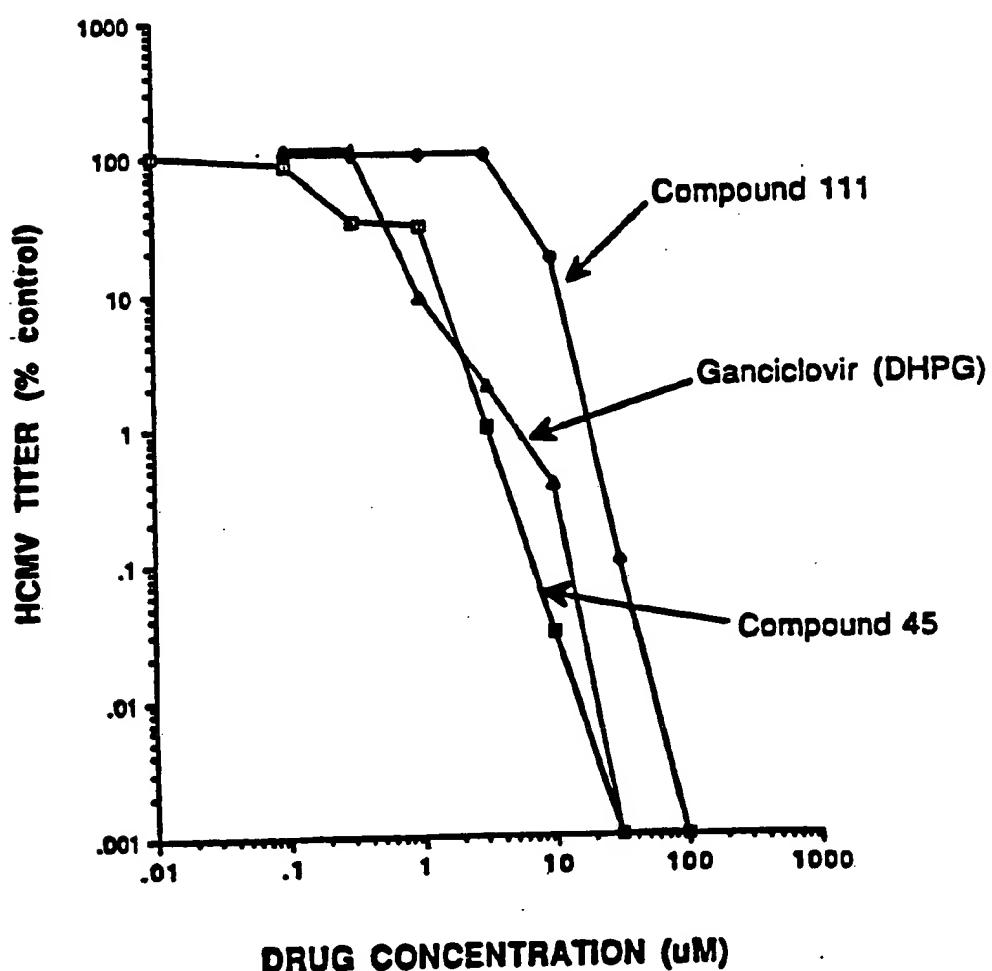


Figure 6. KB Cell Growth in the Presence of Compound 45

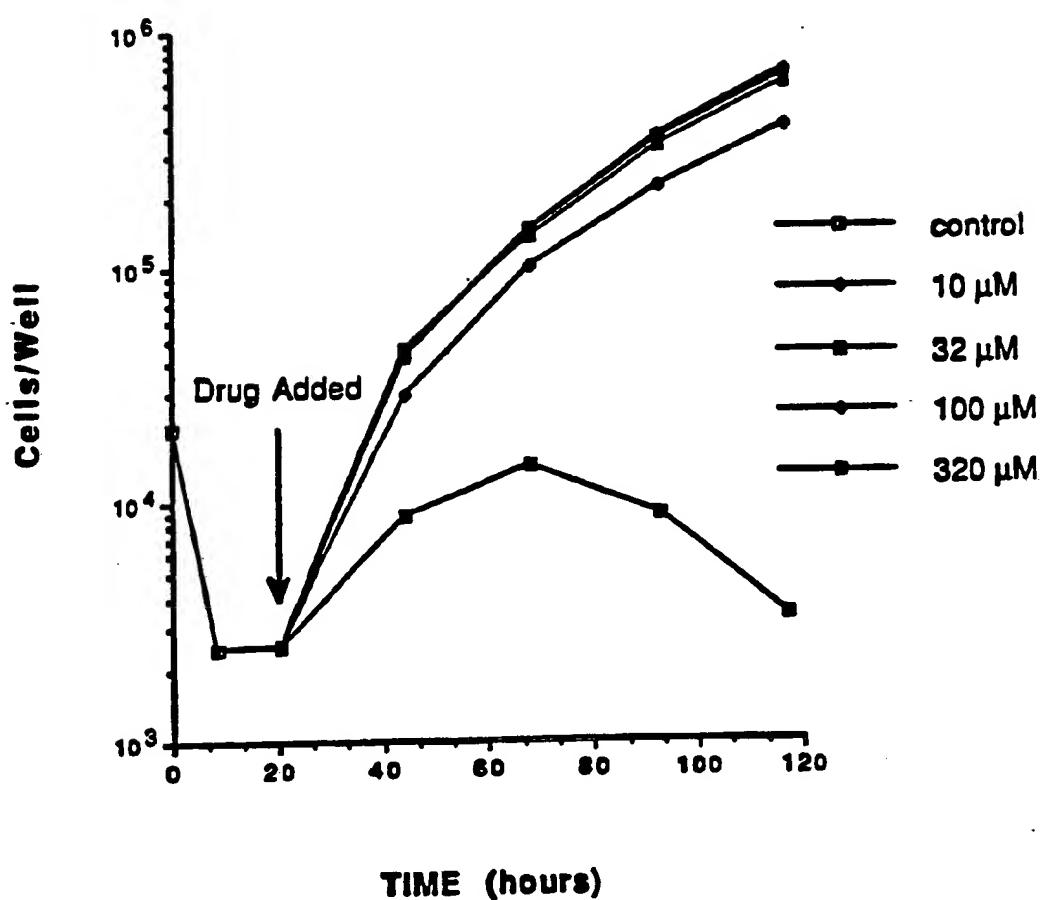


Figure 7. Reversibility of the Effect of Compound 45 on the Growth of KB Cells

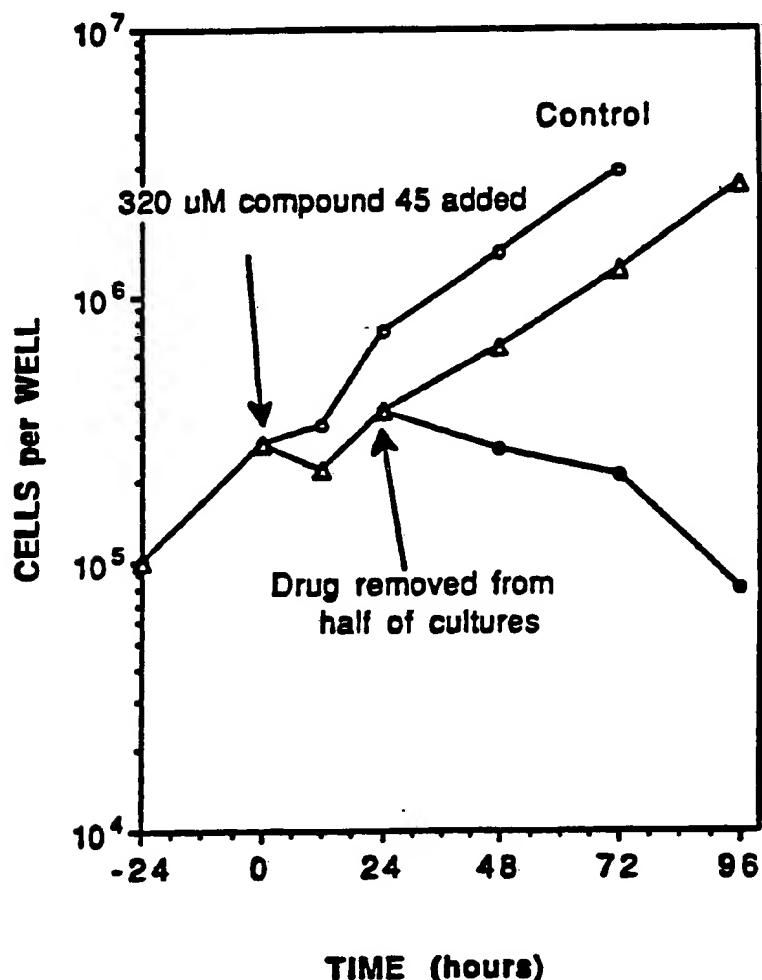


Figure 8. Effect of DRB on the Growth of KB CELLS

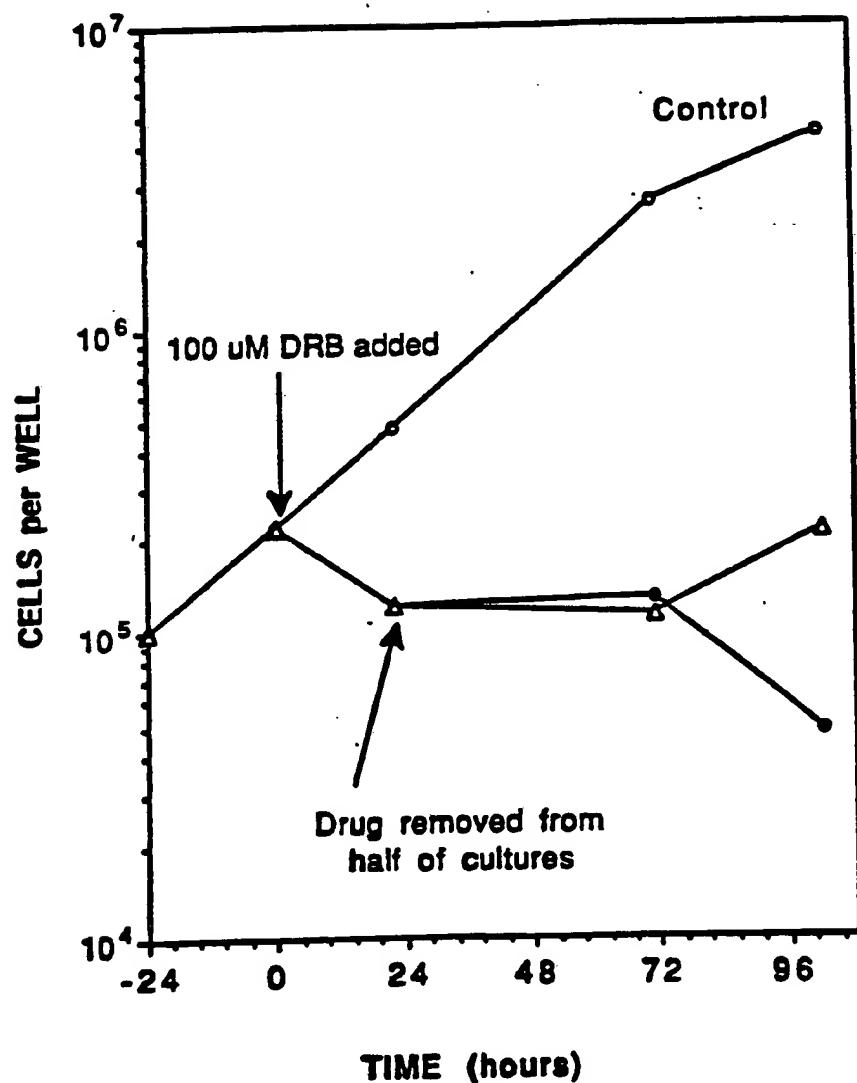


Figure 9.**Antiviral Activity and Cytotoxicity**

Compound Number ^a	50% Inhibitory Concentration (μ M)				Cytotoxicity		
	Antiviral Activity Against:			In Cell Line:			
	HCMV Plaque	HCMV Yield ^b	HSV-1 Plaque	HFF ^c	BSC ^c	KB ^d	
7	4			10			
12c	111 ^e	>100 ^e	42 ^e	77 ^e		45	
13	18		79	32			
19	6 ^e	0.01	21 ^e	20 ^e			
26	2.8	7.0	25	10			
32	5.1 ^e		>100 ^e	32 ^e		>100	
41	20			32			
41c	25			32			
44	40		50	32			
54	22	7.0	25	100	100	>100	
57	30 ^e	0.03	>100	44 ^e		81 ^e	
65	>100 ^e	8.0		>100 ^e			
65a	32 ^e	3.8 ^e	149 ^e	111 ^e		>100	
67	127 ^e	50 ^e	>100	>100 ^e			
81b	55 ^e		>100	161 ^e		100	
81c	30	1.0		100			
87	127 ^e	17 ^e	>100	161 ^e			
90	>100 ^e	10 ^e	>100	161		>100 ^e	
92	0.3 ^e	0.01		32 ^e			
103	0.5 ^e	0.4		3 ^e			
113	30	0.5	19	32		19	
134	60 ^e	19	28	>100 ^e		58 ^e	
155	11	0.06	>100	32		70	
156	>100	6.0	>100	100			
166	69 ^e	149 ^e	>100	97 ^e		62	
166a	24		>100	>100	>100	>100	>100
167	16 ^e	168 ^e	>100 ^e	>100 ^e	>100	>100	>100 ^e
182	127 ^e	1.1 ^e	152 ^e	99		>142 ^e	

^a Number for chemical structure presented in text.^b 90% inhibitory concentration (I_{90}) presented.^c Visual cytotoxicity scored on HFF or BSC-1 cells at time of HCMV or HSV-1 plaque enumeration.^d Average percent inhibition of DNA, RNA and protein synthesis or cell growth determined in KB cells as described in the text.^e Average of two to four replicate experiments.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US91/08124

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER (If several classification symbols apply, indicate all) *

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC
 IPC(5): C07H 17/02; C07D 235/04; A61K 31/07, 31/395
 USCL.: 536/22,23; 514/42,43; 548/305; 514/394,395

II. FIELDS SEARCHED

Classification System	Minimum Documentation Searched ?	
		Classification Symbols
US		536/22,23; 514/42,43; 548/305; 514/394,395
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched *		

STRUCTURE SEARCH ON CAS

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT *

Category *	Citation of Document, ¹¹ with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages ¹²	Relevant to Claim No. ¹³
A	Science, Volume, issued November 1954, Tamm, "Inhibition of Influenza and Mumps Virus Multiplication by 4, 5, 6-(or 5,6,7-) Trichloro-1-B-D-Ribofuranosyl-benzimidazole", pp. 847-848, see Figure 1.	1-96
Y	Cancer Treatment Reports, Vol. 60, No. 10, issued October 1976, Smith et al., "Inhibitors of Hypoxanthine Metabolism in Erlich Ascites Tumor cells In Vitro," pp. 1567-1584, see page 1575, NSC No. 145391.	33-35,54-56 68,70,79-80

* Special categories of cited documents: ¹⁰

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

IV. CERTIFICATION

Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search

07 February 1992

Date of Mailing of this International Search Report

24FEB 1992

International Searching Authority

ISA/US

Signature of Authorized Officer

Gary Kunz

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)

Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No
A	US,A, 4,482,708 (NGUYEN) 13 November 1984, see structure No. 1 in column 2.	1-96
X		<u>54,70</u>
Y	Chemical Reviews, Vol. 70, issued 1970, Townsend et al., Benzimidazole Nucleosidase, Nucleotides, and Related Derivatives," pp. 389-438, see esp. page 431 (instants compounds #53, #54, #42 #44, and #45).	33,37,41,83
Y	US,A, 2,935,508 (Shunk et al) 03 May 1960, see claims 14-17.	73-74